

SCHWAB CHARLES CORP
Form 10-K
February 22, 2019

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d)
OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018
Commission file number
1-9700

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)
Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction
of incorporation or organization) 94-3025021
(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

211 Main Street, San Francisco, CA 94105
(Address of principal executive offices and zip code)
Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (415) 667-7000

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

| Title of each class | Name of each exchange on which registered |
|---|---|
| Common Stock – \$.01 par value per share | New York Stock Exchange |
| Depository Shares, each representing a 1/40 th ownership interest in a share of 6.00% Non-Cumulative Preferred Stock, Series C | New York Stock Exchange |
| Depository Shares, each representing a 1/40 th ownership interest in a share of 5.95% Non-Cumulative Preferred Stock, Series D | New York Stock Exchange |

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.
Yes No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10 K.

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or emerging growth company. See the definitions of “large accelerated filer,” “accelerated filer,” “smaller reporting company,” and “emerging growth company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer
Non-accelerated filer Smaller reporting company
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes No

As of June 30, 2018, the aggregate market value of the voting stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant was \$62.1 billion. For purposes of this information, the outstanding shares of Common Stock owned by directors and executive officers of the registrant were deemed to be shares of the voting stock held by affiliates.

The number of shares of Common Stock outstanding as of January 31, 2019, was 1,332,893,531.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Part III of this Form 10-K incorporates certain information contained in the registrant’s definitive proxy statement for its annual meeting of stockholders, to be held May 15, 2019, by reference to that document.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Annual Report On Form 10-K
For Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Part I

| | | |
|----------|--|----|
| Item 1. | <u>Business</u> | 1 |
| | <u>General Corporate Overview</u> | 1 |
| | <u>Business Strategy and Competitive Environment</u> | 1 |
| | <u>Sources of Net Revenues</u> | 2 |
| | <u>Products and Services</u> | 2 |
| | <u>Regulation</u> | 5 |
| | <u>Available Information</u> | 8 |
| Item 1A. | <u>Risk Factors</u> | 9 |
| Item 1B. | <u>Unresolved Staff Comments</u> | 15 |
| Item 2. | <u>Properties</u> | 16 |
| Item 3. | <u>Legal Proceedings</u> | 16 |
| Item 4. | <u>Mine Safety Disclosures</u> | 16 |

Part II

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| Item 5. | <u>Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</u> | 17 |
| Item 6. | <u>Selected Financial Data</u> | 19 |
| Item 7. | <u>Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u> | 20 |
| | <u>Forward-Looking Statements</u> | 20 |
| | <u>Glossary of Terms</u> | 22 |
| | <u>Overview</u> | 25 |
| | <u>Current Regulatory Environment and Other Developments</u> | 27 |
| | <u>Results of Operations</u> | 28 |
| | <u>Risk Management</u> | 35 |
| | <u>Capital Management</u> | 42 |
| | <u>Fair Value of Financial Instruments</u> | 46 |
| | <u>Critical Accounting Estimates</u> | 46 |
| Item 7A. | <u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u> | 48 |
| Item 8. | <u>Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</u> | 49 |
| Item 9. | <u>Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</u> | 105 |
| Item 9A. | <u>Controls and Procedures</u> | 105 |
| Item 9B. | <u>Other Information</u> | 105 |

Part III

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| Item 10. | <u>Directors, Executive Officers, and Corporate Governance</u> | 105 |
| Item 11. | <u>Executive Compensation</u> | 108 |
| Item 12. | <u>Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</u> | 108 |
| Item 13. | <u>Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</u> | 108 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Item 14. <u>Principal Accountant Fees and Services</u> | <u>108</u> |
| <u>Part IV</u> | |
| Item 15. <u>Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules</u> | <u>109</u> |
| <u>Exhibit Index</u> | <u>110</u> |
| <u>Signatures</u> | <u>114</u> |
| <u>Statistical Disclosure by Bank Holding Companies</u> | <u>F-1</u> |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

PART I

Item 1. Business

General Corporate Overview

The Charles Schwab Corporation (CSC) is a savings and loan holding company, headquartered in San Francisco, California. CSC was incorporated in 1986 and engages, through its subsidiaries (collectively referred to as Schwab or the Company), in wealth management, securities brokerage, banking, asset management, custody, and financial advisory services. At December 31, 2018, Schwab had \$3.25 trillion in client assets, 11.6 million active brokerage accounts, 1.7 million corporate retirement plan participants, and 1.3 million banking accounts.

Significant business subsidiaries of CSC include the following:

Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. (CS&Co), incorporated in 1971, a securities broker-dealer with over 355 domestic branch offices in 47 states, as well as a branch in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico. In addition, Schwab serves clients through branch offices in the United Kingdom (U.K.), Hong Kong, Singapore, and Australia through various subsidiaries;

• Charles Schwab Bank (CSB), a federal savings bank; and

• Charles Schwab Investment Management, Inc. (CSIM), the investment advisor for Schwab's proprietary mutual funds (Schwab Funds[®]) and Schwab's exchange-traded funds (Schwab ETFs[™]).

Schwab provides financial services to individuals and institutional clients through two segments – Investor Services and Advisor Services. The Investor Services segment provides retail brokerage and banking services to individual investors, and retirement plan services, as well as other corporate brokerage services, to businesses and their employees. The Advisor Services segment provides custodial, trading, banking, and support services, as well as retirement business services, to independent registered investment advisors (RIAs), independent retirement advisors, and recordkeepers. These services are further described in the segment discussion below.

As of December 31, 2018, Schwab had full-time, part-time, temporary employees, and persons employed on a contract basis that represented the equivalent of approximately 19,500 full-time employees.

Unless otherwise indicated, the terms “Schwab,” “the Company,” “we,” “us,” or “our” mean CSC together with its consolidated subsidiaries.

Business Strategy and Competitive Environment

Schwab was founded on the belief that all Americans deserve access to a better investing experience. Although much has changed in the intervening years, our purpose remains clear – to champion every client's goals with passion and integrity. Guided by this purpose and our vision of creating the most trusted leader in investment services, management has adopted a strategy described as “Through Clients' Eyes.”

This strategy emphasizes placing clients' perspectives, needs, and desires at the forefront. Because investing plays a fundamental role in building financial security, we strive to deliver a better investing experience for our clients – individual investors and the people and institutions who serve them – by disrupting longstanding industry practices on their behalf and providing superior service. We also aim to offer a broad range of products and solutions to meet client

needs with a focus on transparency, value, and trust. In addition, management works to couple Schwab's scale and resources with ongoing expense discipline to keep costs low and ensure that products and solutions are affordable as well as responsive to client needs. In combination, these are the key elements of our "no trade-offs" approach to serving investors. We believe that following this strategy is the best way to maximize our market valuation and stockholder returns over time.

Management estimates that investable wealth in the United States (U.S.) (consisting of assets in defined contribution, retail wealth management and brokerage, and registered investment advisor channels, along with bank deposits) currently exceeds \$45 trillion, which means the Company's \$3.25 trillion in client assets leaves substantial opportunity for growth. Our strategy is based on the principle that developing trusted relationships will translate into more assets from both new and

- 1 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

existing clients, ultimately driving more revenue, and along with expense discipline and thoughtful capital management, will generate earnings growth and build long-term stockholder value.

Within Investor Services, our competition in serving individual investors spans brokerage, wealth management, and asset management firms, as well as banks and trust companies. In the Advisor Services arena, we compete with institutional custodians, traditional and discount brokers, banks, and trust companies.

Across both segments, our key competitive advantages are:

Scale and Size of the Business – As one of the largest investment services firms in the U.S., we are able to spread operating costs and amortize new investments over a large base of clients, and harness the resources to evolve capabilities to meet client needs.

Operating Efficiency – Coupled with scale, our operating efficiency and sharing of infrastructure across different businesses creates a cost advantage that enables us to competitively price products and services while profitably serving many different client channels.

Operating Structure – Providing bank and asset management services to broker-dealer clients helps serve a wider array of needs, thereby deepening relationships, enhancing the stability of client assets, and enabling diversified revenue streams.

Brand and Corporate Reputation – In an industry dependent on trust, Schwab's reputation and brand across multiple constituents enables us to attract clients and employees while credibly introducing new products to the market.

Service Culture – Delivering a great client experience earns the trust and loyalty of clients and increases the likelihood that those clients will refer others.

Willingness to Disrupt – Management's willingness to challenge the status quo, including our own business practices, to benefit clients fosters innovation and continuous improvement, which helps to attract more clients and assets.

Sources of Net Revenues

Our major sources of net revenues are net interest revenue, asset management and administration fees, and trading revenue. These revenue streams are supported by the combination of bank, broker-dealer, and asset management operating subsidiaries, each of which brings specific capabilities that enable us to provide clients with the products and services they are looking for.

Net interest revenue is the difference between interest generated on interest-earning assets and interest paid on funding sources, the majority of which is derived from client cash balances awaiting investment, held by Schwab as part of clients' overall relationship with the Company. While certain of these client cash balances are held on CS&Co's balance sheet or swept to our money market funds, a substantial amount of existing balances – and most new inflows of cash awaiting investment – are swept to a banking subsidiary. Interest-earning assets are primarily comprised of high-quality fixed income securities, margin loans, and bank loans.

The majority of asset management and administration fees are earned from proprietary money market mutual funds, proprietary and third-party mutual funds and exchange-traded funds (ETFs), and fee-based advisory solutions.

Trading revenue includes commissions earned for executing trades for clients in individual equities, options, futures, fixed income securities, and certain third-party mutual funds and ETFs, as well as principal transaction revenue earned primarily from actions to support client trading in fixed income securities.

Products and Services

We offer a broad range of products through intuitive end-to-end solutions, including robust digital capabilities, to address our clients' varying investment and financial needs. Examples of these product offerings include the following:

- Brokerage – an array of full-feature brokerage accounts with equity and fixed income trading, margin lending, options trading, and cash management capabilities including third-party certificates of deposit;

- 2 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

- Mutual funds – third-party mutual funds through the Mutual Fund Marketplac[®], including non-transaction fee mutual funds through the Mutual Fund OneSource[®] service, which also includes proprietary mutual funds, plus mutual fund trading and clearing services to broker-dealers;
- Exchange-traded funds – an extensive offering of ETFs, including many proprietary and third-party ETFs available without a commission through Schwab ETF OneSource[™];
- Advice solutions – managed portfolios of both proprietary and third-party mutual funds and ETFs, separately managed accounts, customized personal advice for tailored portfolios, specialized planning, and full-time portfolio management;
- Banking – checking and savings accounts, first lien residential real estate mortgage loans (First Mortgages), home equity lines of credit (HELOCs), and pledged asset lines (PALs); and
- Trust – trust custody services, personal trust reporting services, and administrative trustee services.

These investing services are made available through two business segments – Investor Services and Advisor Services. Schwab’s major sources of revenues are generated by both of the reportable segments, based on their respective levels of client assets and activity. Revenue is attributable to a reportable segment based on which segment has the primary responsibility for serving the client. The accounting policies of the reportable segments are the same as those described in “Item 8 – Financial Statements and Supplementary Data – Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements” (Item 8) – Note 2.

Investor Services

Charles Schwab initially founded the Company over 40 years ago to provide individual investors with access to the financial markets at a reasonable cost. The Company has been expanding offerings over time in response to client needs, aiming to provide a compelling and often disruptive solution in the marketplace. As products and services have evolved over the years, the Investor Services segment has expanded and now includes the Retail Investor, Retirement Plan Services, Mutual Fund Clearing Services, and Off-Platform Sales business units.

Through the Retail Investor business unit, we offer individual investors a multi-channel service delivery model, which includes online, mobile, telephone, and branch capabilities. We provide personalized service at competitive prices while giving clients the choice of where, when, and how they do business with us. Financial Consultants (FCs) in Schwab’s branches and regional telephone service centers focus on building and sustaining client relationships. We have the ability to meet client investing needs through a single ongoing point of contact, even as those needs change over time. We believe that this ability to give those clients seeking help, guidance, or advice with an individually tailored solution – ranging from occasional consultations to an ongoing relationship with a Schwab FC or an independent RIA in the Schwab Advisor Network[®] – is a competitive strength compared to the more fragmented or limited offerings of other firms.

Our service delivery model provides quick and efficient access to a broad lineup of information, research, tools, trade execution, and administrative services, which clients can access according to their needs. For example, clients that trade more actively can use these channels to access highly competitive pricing, expert tools, and extensive service capabilities – including experienced, knowledgeable teams of trading specialists, and integrated product offerings. Management also believes the Company is able to compete with the wide variety of financial services firms striving to attract individual client relationships by complementing these capabilities with a range of investment and banking products.

Schwab strives to educate and assist clients in reaching their financial goals. Educational tools include workshops, webcasts, interactive courses, and online information about investing, from which Schwab does not earn revenue. Additionally, we provide various online research and analysis tools that are designed to help clients achieve better investment outcomes. As an example of such tools, Schwab Equity Ratings® is a quantitative model-based stock rating system that provides all clients with ratings on approximately 3,000 stocks, assigning each equity a single grade: A, B, C, D, or F. Schwab Equity Ratings International®, an international ranking methodology, covers stocks of approximately 4,000 foreign companies.

Clients may seek specific investment recommendations, either from time to time or on an ongoing basis. Schwab provides clients seeking advice with personalized solutions. Our approach to advice is based on long-term investment strategies and guidance on portfolio diversification and asset allocation. This approach is designed to be offered consistently across all of Schwab's delivery channels.

- 3 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Schwab Private Client[™] features a personal advice relationship with a designated Portfolio Consultant, supported by a team of investment professionals who provide individualized service, a customized investment strategy developed in collaboration with the client, and ongoing guidance and execution.

For clients seeking a relationship in which investment decisions are fully delegated to a financial professional, Schwab offers several alternatives. We provide investors access to professional investment management in a diversified account that is invested exclusively in either mutual funds or ETFs through the Schwab Managed Portfolios and the Windhaven Investment Management[®] Strategies, or equity securities and ETFs through the ThomasPartners Investment Management[®] Strategies. We also refer investors who want to utilize a specific third-party money manager to direct a portion of their investment assets to the Schwab Managed Account program. Schwab Intelligent Portfolios[®], available since 2015, are for clients who are looking to have their assets professionally managed via a fully automated online investment advisory service. In late 2016, we introduced Schwab Intelligent Advisory[®] to offer our clients a hybrid advisory service which combines live credentialed professionals and algorithm-driven technology to make financial and investment planning more accessible to investors. Finally, clients who want the assistance of an independent professional in managing their financial affairs may be referred to RIAs in the Schwab Advisor Network. These RIAs provide personalized portfolio management, financial planning, and wealth management solutions.

To meet the specific needs of clients who actively trade, Schwab offers integrated web- and software-based trading platforms, real-time market data, options trading, premium stock and futures research, and multi-channel access, as well as sophisticated account and trade management features, risk management and decision support tools, and dedicated personal support.

For U.S. clients wishing to invest in foreign equities, we offer a suite of global investing capabilities, including online access to certain foreign equity markets with the ability to trade in their local currencies. In addition, Schwab serves both foreign investors and non-English-speaking U.S. clients who wish to trade or invest in U.S. dollar-based securities. In the U.S., Schwab serves Mandarin-, Cantonese-, Spanish-, and Vietnamese-speaking clients through a combination of its branch offices, web-based and telephonic services.

We also offer equity compensation plan sponsors full-service recordkeeping for stock plans, stock options, restricted stock, performance shares, and stock appreciation rights. Specialized services for executive transactions and reporting, grant acceptance tracking, and other services are offered to employers to meet the needs of administering the reporting and compliance aspects of an equity compensation plan. In addition, we provide software and services for compliance departments of regulated companies and firms with special requirements to monitor employee personal trading, including trade surveillance technology.

Our Retirement Plan Services business unit offers a bundled 401(k) retirement plan product that provides retirement plan sponsors with extensive investment options, trustee or custodial services, and participant-level recordkeeping. Retirement plan design features, which increase plan efficiency and achieve employer goals, are also offered, such as automatic enrollment, automatic fund mapping at conversion, and automatic contribution increases. In addition to an open architecture investment platform, we offer access to low cost index mutual funds and ETFs. Individuals investing for retirement through 401(k) plans can take advantage of bundled offerings of multiple investment choices, education, and third-party advice. This third-party advice service is delivered online, by phone, or in person, including recommendations based on the core investment fund choices in their retirement plan and specific recommended savings rates. Services also include support for Roth 401(k) accounts, profit sharing, and defined benefit plans.

Lastly, the Mutual Fund Clearing Services business unit provides custody, recordkeeping, and trading services to banks, brokerage firms, and trust companies, and the Off-Platform Sales business unit offers proprietary mutual funds, ETFs, and collective trust funds outside the Company. They are included within the Investor Services segment given their leveraging of the products and services offered to individual investors.

Advisor Services

More than thirty years ago, Schwab supported a small group of entrepreneurial advisors who challenged the industry by creating independent firms. Through the Advisor Services segment, Schwab has become the largest provider of custodial, trading, banking, and support services to RIAs and their clients. We also provide retirement business services to independent retirement advisors and recordkeepers. Management believes that we can maintain our market leadership position primarily

- 4 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

through the efforts of our sales, support, technology, and business consulting service teams, which are dedicated to helping RIAs grow, compete, and succeed in serving their clients. In addition to focusing on superior service, we utilize technology to provide RIAs with a highly-developed, scalable platform for administering their clients' assets easily and efficiently. Advisor Services sponsors and hosts a variety of national, regional, and local events designed to help RIAs identify and implement better ways to expand and efficiently manage their practices.

RIAs who custody client accounts at Schwab may use proprietary software that provides them with up-to-date client account information as well as trading capabilities. The Advisor Services website is the core platform for RIAs to conduct daily business activities online with Schwab, including viewing and managing client account information and accessing news and market information. The website provides account servicing capabilities for RIAs, including account opening, money movement, transfer of assets, trading, checking status, and communicating with our service team. The site provides multi-year archiving of statements, trade confirms, and tax reports, along with document search capabilities. We also provide access to integrations with select third-party platforms, which support a variety of advisor needs including client relationship management, portfolio management systems, trade order management, and financial planning.

The Advisor Services website also provides interactive tools, educational content, and thought leadership for advisors turning independent. We offer a variety of services to help RIAs grow and manage their practices, including business, technology, and operations consulting on a variety of topics critical to an RIA's success, as well as an annual RIA benchmarking study to help firms understand key business metrics relative to peers. We also offer an array of services to help advisors establish their own independent practices through a robust prospect consulting offer. To support them throughout their transition, we offer access to business start-up and transition consultants, technology engineers, and dedicated service teams.

Schwab provides a variety of educational materials, programs, and events to RIAs seeking to expand their knowledge of industry issues and trends, as well as sharpen their individual expertise and practice management skills. We update and share market research on an ongoing basis, and hold a series of events and conferences every year to discuss topics of interest to RIAs, including business strategies and best practices. Schwab sponsors and hosts the annual IMPACT® conference, which provides a national forum for the Company, RIAs, and other industry participants to gather and share information and insights, as well as a multitude of smaller events across the country each year.

RIAs and their clients have access to our broad range of products and services, including individual securities, mutual funds, ETFs, fixed income products, managed accounts, cash products, bank lending, and trust services. By functioning as the custodian, Schwab earns revenue associated with the underlying client assets invested in our products and utilization of the services we provide. In this capacity, we do not charge an explicit custodial fee.

The Advisor Services segment also includes the Retirement Business Services and Corporate Brokerage Retirement Services business units. Retirement Business Services provides trust, custody, and retirement business services to independent retirement plan advisors and independent recordkeepers. Retirement plan assets are held at the Business Trust division of CSB. The Company and independent retirement plan providers work together to serve plan sponsors, combining the consulting and administrative expertise of the administrator with our investment, technology, trust, and custodial services. Retirement Business Services also offers the Schwab Personal Choice Retirement Account®, a self-directed brokerage offering for retirement plans.

Corporate Brokerage Retirement Services serves plan sponsors, advisors, and independent recordkeepers seeking a brokerage-based account to hold retirement plan assets. Retirement plans held at Schwab are either self-trusted or

trusted by a separate, independent trustee. Corporate Brokerage Retirement Services also offers the Schwab Personal Choice Retirement Account[®], and the Company Retirement Account, both of which are self-directed brokerage-based solutions designed to hold the assets of company-sponsored retirement plans.

Regulation

As a participant in the securities, banking and financial services industries, Schwab is subject to extensive regulation under both federal and state laws by governmental agencies, supervisory authorities, and self-regulatory organizations (SROs). We are also subject to oversight by regulatory bodies in other countries in which we operate. These regulations affect our business operations and impose capital, client protection, and market conduct requirements.

- 5 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Holding Company and Bank Regulation

CSC is a savings and loan holding company and is regulated, supervised, and examined by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (Federal Reserve). CSC's principal depository institution subsidiary, CSB, is a federal savings bank and is regulated, supervised, and examined by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (OCC), the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau (CFPB), and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC). CSC and CSB are also subject to regulation and various requirements and restrictions under state and other federal laws.

This regulatory framework is designed to protect depositors and consumers, the safety and soundness of depository institutions and their holding companies, and the stability of the banking system as a whole. This framework affects the activities and investments of CSC and its subsidiaries and gives the regulatory authorities broad discretion in connection with their supervisory, examination and enforcement activities and policies. Below is a discussion of significant regulations. Also see "Item 7 – Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Current Regulatory Environment and Other Developments" for information regarding significant proposed rulemaking related to our regulation.

Basel III Capital and Liquidity Framework

Banking organizations are subject to the regulatory capital rules issued by the Federal Reserve and other U.S. banking regulators, including the OCC and the FDIC. In addition to minimum risk-based capital requirements, banking organizations must hold additional capital, referred to as a capital conservation buffer, to avoid being subject to limits on capital distributions and discretionary bonus payments to executive officers.

For the calculation of a banking organization's regulatory capital and risk-weighted assets, the regulatory capital rules provide for a "standardized approach" framework and an "advanced approaches" framework. Depository institutions and their holding companies with consolidated total assets of \$250 billion or more, or total on-balance-sheet foreign exposure of \$10 billion or more, are required to calculate their regulatory capital and risk-weighted assets using an "advanced approaches" framework and must satisfy the minimum capital requirements under both approaches. Such companies must also maintain a minimum supplementary leverage ratio of at least 3.0%, must include accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI) in their calculation of their capital ratios, are subject to an incremental capital buffer of up to 2.5% of common equity Tier 1 capital if imposed by the banking agencies, referred to as the countercyclical capital buffer, and are subject to certain other enhanced provisions, including additional reporting requirements. Once a banking organization becomes subject to the "advanced approaches" framework, the banking organization and its subsidiary depository institutions must adopt written implementation plans and complete satisfactory parallel runs of at least four consecutive quarters during which they must calculate their risk-weighted assets under both the "advanced approaches" and "standardized approach" framework. The Federal banking agencies will notify the banking organization and its subsidiaries when they determine that the banking organization and its subsidiaries have completed satisfactory parallel runs, which may take several years. The Federal Reserve, OCC, and FDIC have recently granted extensions and exemptions to CSC and its banking subsidiaries such that they will not be required to submit implementation plans until June 30, 2020. As a result of crossing the \$250 billion threshold in 2018, CSC and its banking subsidiaries are subject to all other advanced approaches requirements – the supplementary leverage ratio, the inclusion of AOCI in the calculation of capital ratios, and the countercyclical capital buffer, which is currently 0%.

The liquidity coverage ratio (LCR) rule requires banking organizations with consolidated total assets of \$250 billion or more, or total on-balance-sheet foreign exposure of \$10 billion or more and their depository institution subsidiaries

with \$10 billion or more in total consolidated assets to hold high quality liquid assets (HQLA) in an amount equal to at least 100% of their projected net cash outflows over a prospective 30-calendar-day period of acute liquidity stress, calculated on each business day. Other bank and savings and loan holding companies with total consolidated assets of \$50 billion or more are subject to a modified LCR rule requiring them to hold HQLA in an amount equal to at least 70% of their projected net cash outflows over the 30-day period, calculated as of the last business day of the month. While we are currently subject to the modified LCR rule, we will become subject to the full LCR rule at the beginning of the second quarter of 2019.

- 6 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Capital Stress Testing

Savings and loan holding companies and federal savings banks with total consolidated assets of more than \$10 billion are required to conduct annual company-run stress tests using certain scenarios and prescribed stress-testing methodologies under the Dodd-Frank Act Stress Test (DFAST) rules. CSC reports the results to the Federal Reserve and CSB reports to the OCC. Both publish summaries of their stress test results.

As a savings and loan holding company, CSC is not subject to the annual Comprehensive Capital Analysis and Review (CCAR) process, which requires certain financial institutions to submit annual capital plans to the Federal Reserve.

Insured Depository Institution Resolution Plans

The FDIC requires insured depository institutions with total consolidated assets of \$50 billion or more to submit to the FDIC periodic plans providing for their resolution by the FDIC in the event of failure (resolution plans or so-called “living wills”) under the receivership and liquidation provisions of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act. CSB is required to file with the FDIC a periodic resolution plan demonstrating how the bank could be resolved in an orderly and timely manner in the event of receivership such that the FDIC would be able to: ensure that the bank’s depositors receive access to their deposits within one business day; maximize the net present value of the bank’s assets when disposed of; and minimize losses incurred by the bank’s creditors.

Consumer Financial Protection

The CFPB has broad rulemaking, supervisory and enforcement authority for a wide range of federal consumer protection laws relating to financial products. The CFPB has examination and primary enforcement authority over depository institutions with \$10 billion or more in consolidated total assets.

Deposit Insurance Assessments

The FDIC’s Deposit Insurance Fund (DIF) provides insurance coverage for certain deposits, generally up to \$250,000 per depositor per account ownership type, and is funded by quarterly assessments on insured depository institutions. The FDIC uses a risk-based deposit premium assessment system that, for large insured depository institutions with at least \$10 billion in total consolidated assets, uses a scorecard method based on a number of factors, including the institution’s regulatory ratings, asset quality and brokered deposits. The deposit insurance assessment base is calculated as average consolidated total assets minus average tangible equity.

In July 2016, the FDIC imposed a flat-rate quarterly surcharge on insured depository institutions with total assets of \$10 billion or more and certain of their bank affiliates to pay for an increase to the DIF from 1.15% to 1.35% of the assessment base. As a result, Schwab’s banking subsidiaries became subject to an additional 4.5 basis point surcharge on the amount of their aggregate assessment base in excess of \$10 billion. In the third quarter of 2018, the DIF ratio exceeded 1.35%, and the FDIC eliminated the surcharge beginning in the fourth quarter.

Community Reinvestment Act

The Community Reinvestment Act of 1977 (CRA) requires the primary federal bank regulatory agency for each of Schwab’s depository institution subsidiaries to assess the subsidiary’s record in meeting the credit needs of the

communities served by the bank, including low- and moderate-income neighborhoods and persons. Institutions are assigned one of four ratings (“outstanding,” “satisfactory,” “needs to improve,” or “substantial noncompliance”). The failure of an institution to receive at least a “satisfactory” rating could inhibit the institution or its holding company from undertaking certain activities, including acquisitions or opening branch offices.

Source of Strength

The Dodd-Frank Act codified the Federal Reserve’s long-held position that a depository institution holding company must serve as a source of financial strength for its subsidiary depository institutions, the so-called “source of strength doctrine.” In effect, the holding company may be compelled to commit resources to support the subsidiary in the event the subsidiary is in financial distress.

- 7 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Broker-Dealer and Investment Advisor Regulation

Schwab's principal broker-dealer is CS&Co. CS&Co is registered as a broker-dealer with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the fifty states, the District of Columbia and Commonwealth of Puerto Rico. CS&Co and CSIM are registered as investment advisors with the SEC. Additionally, CS&Co is regulated by the Commodities Futures Trading Commission (CFTC) with respect to the commodity futures and trading activities it conducts as an introducing broker.

Much of the regulation of broker-dealers has been delegated to SROs. CS&Co is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (FINRA), the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (MSRB), NYSE Arca, and the Chicago Board Options Exchange (CBOE). In addition to the SEC, the primary regulators of CS&Co are FINRA and, for municipal securities, the MSRB. The National Futures Association (NFA) is CS&Co's primary regulator for futures and commodities trading activities.

The principal purpose of regulating broker-dealers and investment advisors is the protection of clients and securities markets. The regulations cover all aspects of the securities business, including, among other things, sales and trading practices, publication of research, margin lending, uses and safekeeping of clients' funds and securities, capital adequacy, recordkeeping and reporting, fee arrangements, disclosure to clients, fiduciary duties, and the conduct of directors, officers, and employees.

CS&Co is subject to Rule 15c3-1 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the Uniform Net Capital Rule) and related SRO requirements. The CFTC and NFA also impose net capital requirements. The Uniform Net Capital Rule specifies minimum capital requirements intended to ensure the general financial soundness and liquidity of broker-dealers. CSC itself is not a registered broker-dealer and it is not subject to the Uniform Net Capital Rule. If CS&Co fails to maintain specified levels of net capital, such failure could constitute a default by CSC of certain debt covenants under its credit agreement.

The Uniform Net Capital Rule prohibits CS&Co from paying cash dividends, making unsecured advances or loans or repaying subordinated loans if such payment would result in a net capital amount of less than 5% of aggregate debit balances or less than 120% of its minimum dollar requirement of \$250,000.

In addition to net capital requirements, as a self-clearing broker-dealer, CS&Co is subject to cash deposit and collateral requirements with clearing houses, such as the Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation and Options Clearing Corporation, which may fluctuate significantly from time to time based upon the nature and size of clients' trading activity and market volatility.

As a result of our operations in countries outside the U.S., we are also subject to rules and regulations issued by certain foreign authorities, including the Financial Conduct Authority (FCA) in the U.K., the Securities and Futures Commission (SFC) in Hong Kong, the Monetary Authority of Singapore (MAS) in Singapore, and the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) in Australia.

Financial Services Regulation

Bank Secrecy Act of 1970 and USA PATRIOT Act of 2001

CSC and its subsidiaries that conduct financial services activities are subject to the Bank Secrecy Act of 1970 (BSA), as amended by the USA PATRIOT Act of 2001, which requires financial institutions to develop and implement programs reasonably designed to achieve compliance with these regulations. The BSA and USA PATRIOT Act include a variety of monitoring, recordkeeping and reporting requirements (such as currency transaction reporting and suspicious activity reporting), as well as identity verification and client due diligence requirements which are intended to detect, report and/or prevent money laundering, and the financing of terrorism. In addition, CSC and various subsidiaries of the Company are subject to U.S. sanctions programs administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control.

Available Information

Schwab files annual, quarterly, and current reports, proxy statements, and other information with the SEC. The SEC filings are available to the public over the internet on the SEC's website at <https://www.sec.gov>.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

On our website, <https://www.aboutschwab.com>, we post the following filings after they are electronically filed with or furnished to the SEC: annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K, and any amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. In addition, the website also includes the Dodd-Frank stress test results, our regulatory capital disclosures based on Basel III, and our quarterly average LCR.

All such filings are available free of charge either on our website or by request via email (investor.relations@schwab.com), telephone (415-667-7000), or mail (Charles Schwab Investor Relations at 211 Main Street, San Francisco, CA 94105).

Item 1A. Risk Factors

We face a variety of risks that may affect our operations, financial results, or stock price and many of those risks are driven by factors that we cannot control or predict. The following discussion addresses those risks that management believes are the most significant, although there may be other risks that could arise, or may prove to be more significant than expected, that may affect our operations or financial results.

For a discussion of our risk management, including operational risk, compliance risk, credit risk, market risk, and liquidity risk, see Risk Management and Capital Management in Part II, Item 7.

Developments in the business, economic, and geopolitical environment could negatively impact our business.

Our business can be adversely affected by the general environment – economic, corporate, securities market, regulatory, and geopolitical developments all play a role in client asset valuations, trading activity, interest rates, and overall investor engagement, and are outside of our control. Deterioration in the housing and credit markets, reduction in short-term interest rates, and decreases in securities valuations negatively impact our results of operations and capital resources.

Extensive regulation of our businesses may subject us to significant penalties or limitations on business activities.

As a participant in the securities, banking, and financial services industries, we are subject to extensive regulation under federal, state, and foreign laws by governmental agencies, supervisory authorities and SROs. The costs and uncertainty related to complying with such regulations continue to increase. These regulations affect our business operations and impose capital, client protection, and market conduct requirements on us.

In addition to specific banking laws and regulations, our banking regulators have broad discretion in connection with their supervisory and enforcement activities and examination policies and could require CSC and/or our banking subsidiaries to hold more capital, increase liquidity, or limit their ability to pay dividends or CSC's ability to repurchase or redeem shares. The banking regulators could also limit our ability to grow, including adding assets, launching new products, making acquisitions, and undertaking strategic investments. Other potential regulatory actions include limiting our banking subsidiaries' ability to accept deposits swept from client brokerage accounts and brokered deposits and preventing us from pursuing our business strategy.

Despite our efforts to comply with applicable legal requirements, there are a number of risks, particularly in areas where applicable laws or regulations may be unclear or where regulators could revise their previous guidance. Any

enforcement actions or other proceedings brought by our regulators against us or our affiliates, officers or employees could result in fines, penalties, cease and desist orders, enforcement actions, suspension, disqualification or expulsion, or other disciplinary sanctions, including limitations on our business activities, any of which could harm our reputation and adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

While we maintain systems and procedures designed to ensure that we comply with applicable laws and regulations, violations could occur. In addition, some legal/regulatory frameworks provide for the imposition of fines or penalties for noncompliance even though the noncompliance was inadvertent or unintentional and even though systems and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violations were in place at the time. There may be other negative consequences resulting from a finding of noncompliance, including restrictions on certain activities. Such a finding may also damage our reputation and our relationships with our regulators and could restrict the ability of institutional investment managers to invest in our securities.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Legislation or changes in rules and regulations could negatively affect our business and financial results.

New legislation, rules, regulations and guidance, or changes in the interpretation or enforcement of existing federal, state, foreign and SRO rules, regulations and guidance, including changes relating to mutual funds, broker-dealer fiduciary duties and regulatory treatment of deposit accounts, may directly affect the operation and profitability of Schwab or its specific business lines. Our profitability could also be affected by rules and regulations that impact the business and financial communities generally, including changes to the laws governing taxation, electronic commerce, client privacy and security of client data. In addition, the rules and regulations could result in limitations on the lines of business we conduct, modifications to our business practices, more stringent capital and liquidity requirements, increased deposit insurance assessments or additional costs and could limit our ability to return capital to stockholders. These changes may also require us to invest significant management attention and resources to evaluate and make necessary changes to our compliance, risk management, treasury and operations functions.

Failure to meet capital adequacy and liquidity guidelines could affect our financial condition.

CSC, together with its banking and broker-dealer subsidiaries, must meet certain capital and liquidity standards, subject to qualitative judgments by regulators about the adequacy of Schwab's capital and Schwab's internal assessment of its capital needs. The Uniform Net Capital Rule limits CS&Co's ability to transfer capital to CSC and other affiliates. New regulatory capital, liquidity, and stress testing requirements may limit or otherwise restrict how we utilize our capital, including paying dividends, stock repurchases, and redemptions, and may require us to increase our capital and/or liquidity or to limit our growth. Failure by either CSC or its banking subsidiaries to meet minimum capital requirements could result in certain mandatory and additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have a negative impact on us. In addition, failure by CSC or our banking subsidiaries to maintain a sufficient amount of capital to satisfy their capital conservation buffer and countercyclical capital buffer requirements would result in restrictions on our ability to make capital distributions and discretionary cash bonus payments to executive officers. Any requirement that we increase our regulatory capital, replace certain capital instruments which presently qualify as Tier 1 Capital, or increase regulatory capital ratios or liquidity, could require us to liquidate assets, deleverage or otherwise change our business and/or investment plans, which may adversely affect our financial results. Issuing additional common stock would dilute the ownership of existing stockholders.

In 2018, we crossed the threshold for becoming subject to the "advanced approaches" framework. We are currently subject to a supplementary leverage ratio and related disclosure requirements, the inclusion of AOCI in regulatory capital, and the countercyclical capital buffer, and will become subject to the full LCR in the second quarter of 2019. In addition, federal banking agencies have broad discretion and could require CSC or its banking subsidiaries to hold higher levels of capital or increase liquidity above the applicable regulatory requirements.

Significant interest rate changes could affect our profitability.

The direction and level of interest rates are important factors in our earnings. A decline in interest rates may have a negative impact on our net interest revenue. A low interest rate environment may also have a negative impact on our asset management and administration fee revenues if we have to waive a portion of our management fees for certain Schwab-sponsored money market mutual funds in order to continue providing a positive return to clients.

Although we believe we are positioned to benefit from a rising interest rate environment, a rise in interest rates may cause our funding costs to increase if market conditions or the competitive environment induces us to raise our interest rates to avoid losing deposits, or replace deposits with higher cost funding sources without offsetting increases in

yields on interest-earning assets can reduce our net interest revenue.

The expected phase-out of LIBOR could negatively impact our net interest revenue and require significant operational work.

Certain securities in our investment portfolio and the floating rate loans we offer reference LIBOR as the benchmark rate to determine the applicable interest rate or payment amount. We also use LIBOR in many of our financial models, such as those used for capital stress testing, and to determine the dividend rates for certain of our series of preferred stock which begin to float in 2022 and later. If LIBOR is discontinued after 2021 as expected, there will be uncertainty or differences in the calculation of the applicable interest rate or payment amount depending on the terms of the governing instruments and

- 10 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

there will be significant work required to transition to using the new benchmark rates and implement necessary changes to our systems and financial models. This could result in different financial performance for previously booked transactions and may impact our existing transaction data, products, systems, operations, and pricing processes. The calculation of interest rates under the replacement benchmarks could also impact our net interest revenue. In addition, LIBOR may perform differently during the phase-out period than in the past which could result in lower interest payments and a reduction in the value of certain securities in our investment portfolio.

A significant change in client cash allocations could negatively impact our net interest revenue.

We rely heavily on bank deposits as a low cost source of funding to extend loans to clients and purchase investment securities. Our bank deposits are primarily driven by our bank sweep feature when cash awaiting investment in our client brokerage accounts is swept to our banking subsidiaries. A significant reduction in our clients' allocation to cash, a change in the allocation of that cash, or a transfer of cash away from the Company, could reduce net interest revenue.

Security breaches of our systems, or those of our clients or third parties, may subject us to significant liability and damage Schwab's reputation.

Our business involves the secure processing, storage, and transmission of confidential information about our clients and us. Information security risks for financial institutions are increasing, in part because of the use of the internet and mobile technologies to conduct financial transactions, and the increased sophistication and activities of organized crime, activists, hackers and other external parties, including foreign state actors. Our systems and those of other financial institutions have been and are likely to continue to be the target of cyber attacks, malicious code, computer viruses and denial of service attacks that could result in unauthorized access, misuse, loss or destruction of data (including confidential client information), account takeovers, unavailability of service or other events. Despite our efforts to ensure the integrity of our systems, we may not be able to anticipate or to implement effective preventive measures against all security breaches of these types, especially because the techniques used change frequently or are not recognized until launched, and because security attacks can originate from a wide variety of sources. Data security breaches may also result from non-technical means, for example, employee misconduct.

Given the high volume of transactions that we process, the large number of clients, counterparties and third-party service providers with which we do business and the increasing sophistication of cyber attacks, a cyber attack could occur and persist for an extended period of time before being detected. The extent of a particular cyber attack and the steps we may need to take to investigate the attack may not be immediately clear, and it may take a significant amount of time before an investigation is completed and full and reliable information about the attack is known. During such time we would not necessarily know the extent of the harm or how best to remediate it, and certain errors or actions could be repeated or compounded before they are discovered and remediated, all or any of which would further increase the costs and consequences of a cyber attack.

Security breaches, including breaches of our security measures or those of our third-party service providers or clients, could result in a violation of applicable privacy and other laws and could subject us to significant liability or loss that may not be covered by insurance, actions by our regulators, damage to Schwab's reputation, or a loss of confidence in our security measures which could harm our business. We may be required to expend significant additional resources to modify our protective measures or to investigate and remediate vulnerabilities or other exposures.

We also face risk related to external fraud involving the misappropriation and use of clients' user names, passwords or other personal information to gain access to clients' financial accounts at Schwab. This could occur from the compromise of clients' personal electronic devices or as a result of a data security breach at an unrelated company where clients' personal information is taken and then made available to fraudsters. Such risk has grown in recent years due to the increased sophistication and activities of organized crime and other external parties, including foreign state-sponsored parties. Losses reimbursed to clients under our guarantee against unauthorized account activity could

have a negative impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Technology and operational failures or errors could subject us to losses, litigation, regulatory actions, and reputational damage.

We must process, record and monitor a large number of transactions and our operations are highly dependent on the integrity of our technology systems and our ability to make timely enhancements and additions to our systems. System interruptions,

- 11 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

errors or downtime can result from a variety of causes, including changes in client use patterns, technological failure, changes to our systems, linkages with third-party systems and power failures and can have a significant impact on our business and operations. Our systems are vulnerable to disruptions from human error, execution errors, errors in models such as those used for asset management, capital planning and management, risk management, stress testing and compliance, employee misconduct, unauthorized trading, external fraud, computer viruses, distributed denial of service attacks, cyber attacks, terrorist attacks, natural disaster, power outage, capacity constraints, software flaws, events impacting key business partners and vendors, and similar events. For example, Schwab and other financial institutions have been the target of various denial of service attacks that have, in certain circumstances, made websites, mobile applications and email unavailable for periods of time. It could take an extended period of time to restore full functionality to our technology or other operating systems in the event of an unforeseen occurrence, which could affect our ability to process and settle client transactions. Moreover, instances of fraud or other misconduct might also negatively impact Schwab's reputation and client confidence in the Company, in addition to any direct losses that might result from such instances. Despite our efforts to identify areas of risk, oversee operational areas involving risk, and implement policies and procedures designed to manage these risks, there can be no assurance that we will not suffer unexpected losses, reputational damage or regulatory action due to technology or other operational failures or errors, including those of our vendors or other third parties.

While we devote substantial attention and resources to the reliability, capacity and scalability of our systems, extraordinary trading volumes could cause our computer systems to operate at unacceptably slow speeds or even fail, affecting our ability to process client transactions and potentially resulting in some clients' orders being executed at prices they did not anticipate. Disruptions in service and slower system response times could result in substantial losses and decreased client satisfaction. We are also dependent on the integrity and performance of securities exchanges, clearing houses and other intermediaries to which client orders are routed for execution and settlement. System failures and constraints and transaction errors at such intermediaries could result in delays and erroneous or unanticipated execution prices, cause substantial losses for us and for our clients, and subject us to claims from our clients for damages.

Our investment management operations may subject us to fiduciary or other legal liability for client losses.

Fund and trust management and administration are complex activities and include functions such as recordkeeping and accounting, security pricing, corporate actions, compliance with investment restrictions, daily net asset value computations, account reconciliations, and required distributions to fund shareholders. Failure to properly perform operational tasks, or the misrepresentation of our services and products could subject us to regulatory sanctions, penalties or litigation and result in reputational damage, liability to clients, and the termination of investment management or administration agreements and the withdrawal of assets under our management.

In the management and administration of funds and client accounts, we use quantitative models and other tools and resources to support investment decisions and processes, including those related to risk assessment, portfolio management, trading and hedging activities and product valuations. Errors in the design, function, or underlying assumptions used in these models and tools, particularly if we fail to detect the errors over an extended period, could subject us to claims of a breach of fiduciary duty and potentially large liabilities for make-whole payments, litigation, and/or regulatory fines.

A significant decrease in our liquidity could negatively affect our business as well as reduce client confidence in Schwab.

Maintaining adequate liquidity is crucial to our business operations, including transaction settlement, custody requirements, and lending commitments, among other liquidity needs. We meet our liquidity needs primarily from working capital and cash generated by client activity, as well as external financing. Fluctuations in client cash or deposit balances, as well as market conditions or changes in regulatory treatment of client deposits, may affect our ability to meet our liquidity needs. A reduction in our liquidity position could reduce client confidence in Schwab, which could result in the transfer of client assets and accounts, or could cause us to fail to satisfy our liquidity requirements, including the LCR. In addition, if our broker-dealer or depository institution subsidiaries fail to meet regulatory capital guidelines, regulators could limit the subsidiaries' operations or their ability to upstream funds to CSC, which could reduce CSC's liquidity and adversely affect its ability to repay debt, pay dividends on CSC's preferred stock, or return capital to common stockholders. In addition, CSC may need to provide additional funding to such subsidiaries.

Factors which may adversely affect our liquidity position include CS&Co having temporary liquidity demands due to timing differences between brokerage transaction settlements and the availability of segregated cash balances, fluctuations in cash

- 12 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

held in banking or brokerage client accounts, a dramatic increase in our lending activities (including margin, mortgage-related, and personal lending), increased capital requirements, changes in regulatory guidance or interpretations, other regulatory changes, or a loss of market or client confidence in Schwab resulting in unanticipated withdrawals of client funds.

When available cash is not sufficient for our liquidity needs, we may seek external financing. During periods of disruptions in the credit and capital markets, potential sources of external financing could be reduced, and borrowing costs could increase. Although CSC and CS&Co maintain committed and uncommitted, unsecured bank credit lines and CSC has a commercial paper issuance program, as well as a universal shelf registration statement filed with the SEC which can be used to sell securities, financing may not be available on acceptable terms or at all due to market conditions or disruptions in the credit markets. In addition, a significant downgrade in the Company's credit ratings could increase its borrowing costs and limit its access to the capital markets.

We may suffer significant losses from our credit exposures.

Our businesses are subject to the risk that a client, counterparty or issuer will fail to perform its contractual obligations, or that the value of collateral held to secure obligations will prove to be inadequate. While we have policies and procedures designed to manage this risk, the policies and procedures may not be fully effective. Our exposure mainly results from margin lending, clients' options and futures trading, securities lending, mortgage lending, pledged asset lending, our role as a counterparty in financial contracts and investing activities, and indirectly from the investing activities of certain of the proprietary funds we sponsor.

When clients purchase securities on margin, borrow on lines of credit collateralized by securities, or trade options or futures, we are subject to the risk that clients may default on their obligations when the value of the securities and cash in their accounts falls below the amount of clients' indebtedness. Abrupt changes in securities valuations and the failure of clients to meet margin calls could result in substantial losses.

We have exposure to credit risk associated with our investments. Those investments are subject to price fluctuations as a result of changes in the financial market's assessment of credit quality. Loss of value of securities can negatively affect earnings if management determines that such securities are other than temporarily impaired. The evaluation of whether other-than-temporary impairment (OTTI) exists is a matter of judgment, which includes the assessment of several factors. If management determines that a security is OTTI, the cost basis of the security may be adjusted and a corresponding loss may be recognized in current earnings. Deterioration in the performance of available for sale (AFS) and held to maturity (HTM) securities could result in the recognition of future impairment charges. Even if a security is not considered OTTI, if we were ever forced to sell the security sooner than intended prior to maturity due to liquidity needs, we would have to recognize any unrealized losses at that time.

Our bank loans primarily consist of First Mortgages, HELOCs, and PALs. Increases in delinquency and default rates, housing and stock price declines, increases in the unemployment rate, and other economic factors can result in charges for loan loss reserves and write downs on such loans.

Heightened credit exposures to specific counterparties or instruments can increase our risk of loss. Examples include:

- Large positions in financial instruments collateralized by assets with similar economic characteristics or in securities of a single issuer or industry;
- Mortgage loans and HELOCs to banking clients which are secured by properties in the same geographic region; and

Client margins, options or futures, pledged assets, and securities lending activities collateralized by or linked to securities of a single issuer, index, or industry.

We sponsor a number of proprietary money market mutual funds and other proprietary funds. Although we have no obligation to do so, we may decide for competitive or other reasons to provide credit, liquidity or other support to our funds in the event of significant declines in valuation of fund holdings or significant redemption activity that exceeds available liquidity. Such support could cause us to take significant charges, could reduce our liquidity and, in certain situations, could, with respect to proprietary funds other than money market mutual funds, result in us having to consolidate one or more

- 13 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

funds in our financial statements. If we choose not to provide credit, liquidity or other support in such a situation, Schwab could suffer reputational damage and its business could be adversely affected.

We are subject to litigation and regulatory investigations and proceedings and may not be successful in defending against claims or proceedings.

The financial services industry faces significant litigation and regulatory risks. We are subject to claims and lawsuits in the ordinary course of business, including arbitrations, class actions and other litigation, some of which include claims for substantial or unspecified damages. We are also the subject of inquiries, investigations, and proceedings by regulatory and other governmental agencies.

Litigation and arbitration claims include those brought by our clients and the clients of third party advisors whose assets are custodied at Schwab. Claims from clients of third party advisors may allege losses due to investment decisions made by the third party advisors or the advisors' misconduct. Litigation claims also include claims from third parties alleging infringement of their intellectual property rights (e.g., patents). Such litigation can require the expenditure of significant company resources. If we were found to have infringed on a third-party patent, or other intellectual property rights, we could incur substantial damages, and in some circumstances could be enjoined from using certain technology, or providing certain products or services.

Actions brought against us may result in settlements, awards, injunctions, fines, penalties or other results adverse to us, including reputational harm. Even if we are successful in defending against these actions, the defense of such matters may result in us incurring significant expenses. A substantial judgment, settlement, fine, or penalty could be material to our operating results or cash flows for a particular future period, depending on our results for that period. In market downturns and periods of heightened volatility, the volume of legal claims and amount of damages sought in litigation and regulatory proceedings against financial services companies have historically increased.

We rely on outsourced service providers to perform key functions.

We rely on external service providers to perform certain key technology, processing, servicing, and support functions. These service providers face technology, operating, business, and economic risks, and any significant failures by them, including the improper use or disclosure of our confidential client, employee, or company information, could cause us to incur losses and could harm Schwab's reputation. An interruption in or the cessation of service by any external service provider as a result of systems failures, capacity constraints, financial difficulties or for any other reason, and our inability to make alternative arrangements in a timely manner could disrupt our operations, impact our ability to offer certain products and services, and result in financial losses to us. Switching to an alternative service provider may require a transition period and result in less efficient operations.

Potential strategic transactions could have a negative impact on our financial position.

We evaluate potential strategic transactions, including business combinations, acquisitions, and dispositions. Any such transaction could have a material impact on our financial position, results of operations, or cash flows. The process of evaluating, negotiating, and effecting any such strategic transaction may divert management's attention from other business concerns, and might cause the loss of key clients, employees, and business partners. Moreover, integrating businesses and systems may result in unforeseen expenditures as well as numerous risks and uncertainties, including the need to integrate operational, financial, and management information systems and management controls, integrate relationships with clients and business partners, and manage facilities and employees in different geographic areas. In

addition, an acquisition may cause us to assume liabilities or become subject to litigation or regulatory proceedings. Further, we may not realize the anticipated benefits from an acquisition, and any future acquisition could be dilutive to our current stockholders' percentage ownership or to earnings per common share (EPS).

Our acquisitions and dispositions are typically subject to closing conditions, including regulatory approvals and the absence of material adverse changes in the business, operations or financial condition of the entity being acquired or sold. To the extent we enter into an agreement to buy or sell an entity, there can be no guarantee that the transaction will close when expected, or at all. If a material transaction does not close, our stock price could decline.

- 14 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Our industry is characterized by aggressive price competition.

We continually monitor our pricing in relation to competitors and periodically adjust trade commission rates, interest rates on deposits and loans, fees for advisory services, expense ratios on mutual funds and ETFs, and other pricing to enhance our competitive position. Increased price competition from other financial services firms to attract clients, such as reduced commissions, higher deposit rates, or reduced mutual fund or ETF expense ratios, could impact our results of operations and financial condition.

We face competition in hiring and retaining qualified employees.

The market for qualified personnel in our business is highly competitive. At various times, different functions and roles are in especially high demand in the market, compelling us to pay more to attract talent. Our ability to continue to compete effectively will depend upon our ability to attract new employees and retain existing employees while managing compensation costs.

Our stock price has fluctuated historically, and may continue to fluctuate.

Our stock price can be volatile. Among the factors that may affect the volatility of our stock price are the following:

• Our exposure to changes in interest rates;

• Speculation in the investment community or the press about, or actual changes in, our competitive position, organizational structure, executive team, operations, financial condition, financial reporting and results, expense discipline, or strategic transactions;

• The announcement of new products, services, acquisitions, or dispositions by us or our competitors; and

• Increases or decreases in revenue or earnings, changes in earnings estimates by the investment community, and variations between estimated financial results and actual financial results.

Changes in the stock market generally, or as it concerns our industry, as well as geopolitical, corporate, regulatory, business, and economic factors may also affect our stock price.

Future sales of CSC's equity securities may adversely affect the market price of CSC's common stock and result in dilution.

CSC's certificate of incorporation authorizes CSC's Board of Directors, among other things, to issue additional shares of common or preferred stock or securities convertible or exchangeable into equity securities, without stockholder approval.

CSC may issue additional equity or convertible securities to raise additional capital or for other purposes. The issuance of any additional equity or convertible securities could be substantially dilutive to holders of CSC's common stock and may adversely affect the market price of CSC's common stock.

Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 2. Properties

A summary of Schwab's significant locations is presented in the following table. Locations are leased or owned as noted below. The square footage amounts are presented net of space that has been subleased to third parties.

| December 31, 2018 (amounts in thousands) Location | Square Footage | |
|---|-------------------|-------|
| | Leased | Owned |
| Corporate headquarters: San Francisco, CA | 662 | — |
| Service and other office space: | | |
| Phoenix, AZ | 28 | 728 |
| Denver, CO | — | 731 |
| Austin, TX | 83 | 452 |
| Dallas, TX | 318 | — |
| Indianapolis, IN | — | 161 |
| Orlando, FL | 159 | — |
| Chicago, IL | 145 | — |
| Richfield, OH | — | 117 |
| El Paso, TX | — | 105 |

Substantially all of our branch offices are located in leased premises. The corporate headquarters, data centers, offices, and service centers support both of our segments.

Item 3. Legal Proceedings

For a discussion of legal proceedings, see Item 8 – Note 14.

Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

Not applicable.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

PART II

Item 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

CSC’s common stock is listed on The New York Stock Exchange under the ticker symbol SCHW. The number of common stockholders of record as of January 31, 2019, was 5,803. The closing market price per share on that date was \$46.77.

The following graph shows a five-year comparison of cumulative total returns for CSC’s common stock, the Standard & Poor’s 500 Index, and the Dow Jones U.S. Investment Services Index, each of which assumes an initial investment of \$100 and reinvestment of dividends.

| December 31, | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| The Charles Schwab Corporation | \$100 | \$117 | \$129 | \$156 | \$204 | \$167 |
| Standard & Poor’s 500 Index | \$100 | \$114 | \$115 | \$129 | \$157 | \$150 |
| Dow Jones U.S. Investment Services Index | \$100 | \$115 | \$114 | \$144 | \$180 | \$159 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

On October 25, 2018, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of up to \$1.0 billion of common stock, which was completed as of December 31, 2018 (see Item 8 – Note 17).

On January 30, 2019, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of up to \$4.0 billion of common stock. The authorization does not have an expiration date.

The following table summarizes purchases made by or on behalf of CSC of its common stock for each calendar month in the fourth quarter of 2018 (in millions, except number of shares, which are in thousands, and per share amounts):

| Month | Total Number of Shares Purchased | Average Price Paid per Share | Total Number of Shares Purchased as Part of Publicly Announced Program | Approximate Dollar Value of Shares That May Be Purchased Under the Announced Program ⁽²⁾ |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---|
| October: | | | | |
| Share repurchase program | 3,831 | \$ 45.02 | 3,831 | \$ 827 |
| Employee transactions ⁽¹⁾ | 5 | \$ 49.67 | N/A | N/A |
| November: | | | | |
| Share repurchase program | 11,862 | \$ 47.03 | 11,862 | \$ 269 |
| Employee transactions ⁽¹⁾ | 651 | \$ 46.59 | N/A | N/A |
| December: | | | | |
| Share repurchase program | 6,643 | \$ 40.52 | 6,643 | \$ — |
| Employee transactions ⁽¹⁾ | 269 | \$ 45.86 | N/A | N/A |
| Total: | | | | |
| Share repurchase program | 22,336 | \$ 44.75 | 22,336 | \$ — |
| Employee transactions ⁽¹⁾ | 925 | \$ 46.40 | N/A | N/A |

⁽¹⁾ Includes restricted shares withheld (under the terms of grants under employee stock incentive plans) to offset tax withholding obligations that occur upon vesting and release of restricted shares. CSC may receive shares delivered or attested to pay the exercise price and/or to satisfy tax withholding obligations by employees who exercise stock options granted under employee stock incentive plans, which are commonly referred to as stock swap exercises.

⁽²⁾ All repurchases under the 2018 share repurchase program authorization were completed by the end of 2018.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 6. Selected Financial Data

Selected Financial and
Operating Data(In Millions, Except Per Share Amounts,
Ratios, or as Noted)

| | Growth Rates | | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 | 2014 | |
|--|------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---|
| | 4-Year 2014-2018 ⁽¹⁾ | Annual 2017-2018 | | | | | | |
| Results of Operations | | | | | | | | |
| Net revenues | 14% | 18% | \$10,132 | \$8,618 | \$7,478 | \$6,380 | \$6,058 | |
| Expenses excluding interest | 9% | 12% | \$5,570 | \$4,968 | \$4,485 | \$4,101 | \$3,943 | |
| Net income | 28% | 49% | \$3,507 | \$2,354 | \$1,889 | \$1,447 | \$1,321 | |
| Net income available to common stockholders | 27% | 53% | \$3,329 | \$2,180 | \$1,746 | \$1,364 | \$1,261 | |
| Earnings per common share: | | | | | | | | |
| Basic | 27% | 52% | \$2.47 | \$1.63 | \$1.32 | \$1.04 | \$.96 | |
| Diluted | 27% | 52% | \$2.45 | \$1.61 | \$1.31 | \$1.03 | \$.95 | |
| Dividends declared per common share | 18% | 44% | \$.46 | \$.32 | \$.27 | \$.24 | \$.24 | |
| Weighted average common shares outstanding: | | | | | | | | |
| Basic | 1% | 1% | 1,348 | 1,339 | 1,324 | 1,315 | 1,303 | |
| Diluted | 1% | 1% | 1,361 | 1,353 | 1,334 | 1,327 | 1,315 | |
| Net interest revenue as a percentage of net revenues | | | 57 | % 50 | % 44 | % 40 | % 38 | % |
| Asset management and administration fees as a percentage of net revenues | | | 32 | % 39 | % 41 | % 41 | % 42 | % |
| Trading revenue as a percentage of net revenues | | | 8 | % 8 | % 11 | % 14 | % 15 | % |
| Effective income tax rate | | | 23.1 | % 35.5 | % 36.9 | % 36.5 | % 37.5 | % |
| Performance Measures | | | | | | | | |
| Net revenue growth | | | 18 | % 15 | % 17 | % 5 | % 11 | % |
| Pre-tax profit margin | | | 45.0 | % 42.4 | % 40.0 | % 35.7 | % 34.9 | % |
| Return on average common stockholders' equity | | | 19 | % 15 | % 14 | % 12 | % 12 | % |
| Financial Condition (at year end) | | | | | | | | |
| Total assets | 18% | 22% | \$296,482 | \$243,274 | \$223,383 | \$183,705 | \$154,635 | |
| Short-term borrowings | N/M | (100)% | — | \$15,000 | — | — | — | |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Long-term debt | 38% | 45% | \$6,878 | \$4,753 | \$2,876 | \$2,877 | \$1,892 |
| Preferred stock | 34% | — | \$2,793 | \$2,793 | \$2,783 | \$1,459 | \$872 |
| Total stockholders' equity | 15% | 12% | \$20,670 | \$18,525 | \$16,421 | \$13,402 | \$11,803 |
| Assets to stockholders' equity ratio | | | 14 | 13 | 14 | 14 | 13 |
| Debt to total capital ratio (2) | | | 25 | % 52 | % 15 | % 18 | % 14 |
| Employee Information | | | | | | | |
| Full-time equivalent employees (in thousands, at year end) | 8% | 11% | 19.5 | 17.6 | 16.2 | 15.3 | 14.6 |

(1) The Compounded 4-year growth rate is computed using the formula: Compound annual growth rate = (Ending Value / Beginning Value)^{.25} - 1.

(2) The Debt to total capital ratio is computed using the formula: Total Debt (short and long-term) / (Total Debt + Stockholders' Equity).

N/M Not meaningful.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

In addition to historical information, this Annual Report on Form 10-K contains "forward-looking statements" within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Forward-looking statements are identified by words such as "believe," "anticipate," "expect," "intend," "plan," "will," "may," "estimate," "appear," "could," "would," and other similar expressions. In addition, any statements that refer to expectations, projections, or other characterizations of future events or circumstances are forward-looking statements.

These forward-looking statements, which reflect management's beliefs, objectives, and expectations as of the date hereof, are estimates based on the best judgment of Schwab's senior management. These statements relate to, among other things:

Maximizing our market valuation and stockholder returns over time; our belief that developing trusted relationships will translate into more client assets which drives revenue and, along with expense discipline and thoughtful capital management, generates earnings growth and builds stockholder value; and Schwab's ability to pursue its business strategy and maintain its market leadership position; (see Business Strategy and Competitive Environment in Part I, Item 1);

The impact of legal proceedings and regulatory matters (see Item 8 – Note 14);

Effective capital management supporting business growth and capital returns to stockholders (see Overview in Part II, Item 7);

The adjustment of rates paid on client-related liabilities; the stability, rate sensitivity, and duration of client-related liabilities; managing the duration of interest-earning assets; and Schwab's positioning to benefit from an increase in interest rates and limit its exposure to falling rates (see Net Interest Revenue in Part II, Item 7);

2019 capital expenditures (see Total Expenses Excluding Interest in Part II, Item 7);

Sources of liquidity, capital, and level of dividends (see Liquidity Risk in Part II, Item 7);

Capital ratios (see Regulatory Capital Requirements in Part II, Item 7);

The impact of changes in management's estimates on Schwab's results of operations (see Critical Accounting Estimates in Part II, Item 7);

The expected impact of new accounting standards not yet adopted (see Item 8 – Note 2); and

The impact of changes in the likelihood of indemnification and guarantee payment obligations on Schwab's results of operations (see Item 8 – Note 14).

Achievement of the expressed beliefs, objectives and expectations described in these statements is subject to certain risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from the expressed beliefs, objectives, and expectations. Readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K or, in the case of documents incorporated by reference, as of the date of those documents.

Important factors that may cause actual results to differ include, but are not limited to:

General market conditions, including the level of interest rates, equity valuations and trading activity;

Our ability to attract and retain clients, develop trusted relationships, and grow client assets;

Client use of our advisory solutions and other products and services;

- The level of client assets, including cash balances;
- Competitive pressure on pricing, including deposit rates;
- Client sensitivity to interest rates;
- Regulatory guidance;
- Timing and amount of transfers to bank sweep deposits;
- Capital and liquidity needs and management;
- Our ability to manage expenses;
- Our ability to develop and launch new products, services, and capabilities, as well as implement infrastructure, in a timely and successful manner;
- The timing of campus expansion work and technology projects;
- The effect of adverse developments in litigation or regulatory matters and the extent of any related charges; and
- Potential breaches of contractual terms for which we have indemnification and guarantee obligations.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Certain of these factors, as well as general risk factors affecting the Company, are discussed in greater detail in Risk Factors in Part I, Item 1A.

- 21 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Active brokerage accounts: Brokerage accounts with activity within the preceding 270 days.

Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (AOCI): A component of stockholders' equity which includes unrealized gains and losses on AFS securities and net gains or losses associated with pension obligations.

Asset-backed securities: Debt securities backed by financial assets such as loans or receivables.

Assets receiving ongoing advisory services: Market value of all client assets custodied at the Company under the guidance of an independent advisor or enrolled in one of Schwab's retail or other advisory solutions.

Basel III: Global regulatory standards on bank capital adequacy and liquidity issued by the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision.

Basis point: One basis point equals 1/100th of 1%, or 0.01%.

Client assets: The market value, as of the end of the reporting period, of all client assets in our custody and proprietary products, which includes both cash and securities. Average client assets are the daily average client asset balance for the period.

Client cash as a percentage of client assets: Calculated as money market fund balances, bank deposits, Schwab One[®] balances, and certain cash equivalents as a percentage of client assets.

Clients' daily average trades: Includes daily average revenue trades by clients, trades by clients in asset-based pricing relationships, and all commission-free trades.

Common Equity Tier 1 (CET1) Capital: The sum of common stock and related surplus net of treasury stock, retained earnings, AOCI and qualifying minority interests, less applicable regulatory adjustments and deductions. Schwab made a one-time election to opt-out of the requirement to include most components of AOCI in CET1 Capital under the "standardized approach" framework. Beginning in 2019, Schwab must include AOCI in CET1 Capital.

Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital Ratio: The ratio of CET1 Capital to total risk-weighted assets as of the end of the period.

Core net new client assets: Net new client assets before significant one-time inflows or outflows, such as acquisitions/divestitures or extraordinary flows (generally greater than \$10 billion) relating to a specific client. These flows may span multiple reporting periods.

Customer Protection Rule: Refers to Rule 15c3-3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Daily Average Revenue Trades (DARTs): Total revenue trades during a certain period, divided by the number of trading days in that period. Revenue trades include all client trades that generate trading revenue (i.e., commission revenue or principal transaction revenue).

Debt to total capital ratio: Calculated as total debt divided by stockholders' equity and total debt.

Delinquency roll rates: The rates at which loans transition through delinquency stages, ultimately resulting in a loss. Schwab considers a loan to be delinquent if it is 30 days or more past due.

Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (Dodd-Frank): Regulatory reform legislation containing numerous provisions which expanded prudential regulation of large financial services companies.

Duration: Duration is typically used to measure the expected change in value of a financial instrument for a 1% change in interest rates, expressed in years.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Final Regulatory Capital Rules: Refers to the regulatory capital rules issued by U.S. banking agencies which implemented Basel III and relevant provisions of Dodd-Frank, which apply to savings and loan holding companies, as well as federal savings banks.

First mortgages: Refers to first lien residential real estate mortgage loans.

Full-time equivalent employees: Represents the total number of hours worked divided by a 40-hour work week for the following categories: full-time, part-time and temporary employees and persons employed on a contract basis.

High Quality Liquid Assets (HQLA): Assets with a high potential to be converted easily and quickly into cash.

Interest-bearing liabilities: Includes bank deposits, payables to brokerage clients, short-term borrowings, and long-term debt on which Schwab pays interest.

Interest-earning assets: Includes cash and cash equivalents, cash and investments segregated, broker-related receivables, receivables from brokerage clients, investment securities, and bank loans on which Schwab earns interest.

Investment grade: Defined as a rating equivalent to a Moody's Investors Service (Moody's) rating of "Baa" or higher, or a Standard & Poor's Rating Group (Standard & Poor's) or Fitch Ratings, Ltd (Fitch) rating of "BBB-" or higher.

Liquidity Coverage Ratio (LCR): The ratio of HQLA to projected net cash outflows during a 30-day stress scenario.

Loan-To-Value (LTV) ratio: Calculated as the principal amount of a loan divided by the value of the collateral securing the loan.

Margin loans: Advances made to brokerage clients on a secured basis to purchase securities reflected in receivables from brokerage clients on the consolidated balance sheets.

Master netting arrangement: An agreement between two counterparties that have multiple contracts with each other that provides for net settlement of all contracts through a single cash payment in the event of default or termination of any one contract.

Mortgage-backed securities: A type of asset-backed security that is secured by a mortgage or group of mortgages.

Net interest margin: Net interest revenue (annualized for interim periods) divided by average interest-earning assets.

Net new client assets: Total inflows of client cash and securities to Schwab less client outflows. Inflows include dividends and interest; outflows include commissions and fees. Capital gains distributions are excluded.

Net Stable Funding Ratio (NSFR): Measures an organization's "available" amount of stable funding relative to its "required" amount of stable funding over a one-year time horizon.

New brokerage accounts: All brokerage accounts opened during the period, as well as any accounts added via acquisition.

Nonperforming assets: The total of nonaccrual loans and other real estate owned.

Order flow revenue: Net compensation received from markets and firms to which CS&Co sends equity and options orders. The amount reflects rebates received for certain types of orders, less fees paid for orders where exchange fees or other charges apply.

Pledged Asset Line[®] (PAL): A non-purpose revolving line of credit from CSB secured by eligible assets held in a separate pledged brokerage account maintained at CS&Co.

Return on average common stockholders' equity: Calculated as net income available to common stockholders (annualized for interim periods) divided by average common stockholders' equity.

- 23 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Risk-weighted assets: Computed by assigning specific risk-weightings to assets and off-balance sheet instruments for capital adequacy calculations.

Tier 1 Capital: The sum of CET1 Capital and additional Tier 1 Capital instruments and related surplus, less applicable adjustments and deductions.

Tier 1 Leverage Ratio: End-of-period Tier 1 Capital divided by adjusted average total consolidated assets for the quarter.

Trading days: Days in which the markets/exchanges are open for the buying and selling of securities. Early market closures are counted as half-days.

U.S. federal banking agencies: Refers to the Federal Reserve, the OCC, the FDIC, and the CFPB.

Uniform Net Capital Rule: Refers to Rule 15c3-1 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which specifies minimum capital requirements that are intended to ensure the general financial soundness and liquidity of broker-dealers at all times.

- 24 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

OVERVIEW

Management focuses on several client activity and financial metrics in evaluating Schwab's financial position and operating performance. We believe that metrics relating to net new and total client assets, as well as client cash levels and utilization of advisory services, offer perspective on our business momentum and client engagement. Data on new and total client brokerage accounts provides additional perspective on our ability to attract and retain new business. Total net revenue growth, pre-tax profit margin, EPS, return on average common stockholders' equity, and the Consolidated Tier 1 Leverage Ratio provide broad indicators of Schwab's overall financial health, operating efficiency, and ability to generate acceptable returns. Total expenses, excluding interest, as a percentage of average client assets, is a measure of operating efficiency. Results for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016 are as follows:

| | Growth Rate 1-Year 2017-2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------|------------|------------|---|
| Client Metrics | | | | | |
| Net new client assets (in billions) ⁽¹⁾ | (43)% | \$ 133.9 | \$ 233.1 | \$ 125.5 | |
| Core net new client assets (in billions) | 15% | \$ 227.8 | \$ 198.6 | \$ 125.5 | |
| Client assets (in billions, at year end) | (3)% | \$ 3,252.2 | \$ 3,361.8 | \$ 2,779.5 | |
| Average client assets (in billions) | 11% | \$ 3,409.6 | \$ 3,060.2 | \$ 2,614.7 | |
| New brokerage accounts (in thousands) | 9% | 1,576 | 1,441 | 1,093 | |
| Active brokerage accounts (in thousands, at year end) | 8% | 11,593 | 10,755 | 10,155 | |
| Assets receiving ongoing advisory services (in billions, at year end) | 1% | \$ 1,708.5 | \$ 1,699.8 | \$ 1,401.4 | |
| Client cash as a percentage of client assets (at year end) | | 12.8 | % 10.8 | % 13.0 | % |
| Company Financial Metrics | | | | | |
| Total net revenues | 18% | \$ 10,132 | \$ 8,618 | \$ 7,478 | |
| Total expenses excluding interest | 12% | 5,570 | 4,968 | 4,485 | |
| Income before taxes on income | 25% | 4,562 | 3,650 | 2,993 | |
| Taxes on income | (19)% | 1,055 | 1,296 | 1,104 | |
| Net income | 49% | \$ 3,507 | \$ 2,354 | \$ 1,889 | |
| Preferred stock dividends and other | 2% | 178 | 174 | 143 | |
| Net income available to common stockholders | 53% | \$ 3,329 | \$ 2,180 | \$ 1,746 | |
| Earnings per common share — diluted | 52% | \$ 2.45 | \$ 1.61 | \$ 1.31 | |
| Net revenue growth from prior year | | 18 | % 15 | % 17 | % |
| Pre-tax profit margin | | 45.0 | % 42.4 | % 40.0 | % |
| Return on average common stockholders' equity | | 19 | % 15 | % 14 | % |
| Expenses excluding interest as a percentage of average client assets | | 0.16 | % 0.16 | % 0.17 | % |
| Consolidated Tier 1 Leverage Ratio (at year end) | | 7.1 | % 7.6 | % 7.2 | % |

⁽¹⁾ 2018 includes outflows of \$93.9 billion from certain mutual fund clearing services clients. 2017 includes inflows of \$34.5 billion from certain mutual fund clearing services clients.

2018 Compared to 2017

Net income increased by \$1.2 billion, or 49%, in 2018, driven primarily by business momentum, a supportive economic environment for much of the year, and lower corporate tax rates. Continued execution of our 'Through Clients' Eyes' strategy helped us succeed with clients. In 2018, clients opened 1.6 million new brokerage accounts, helping bring active brokerage accounts to 11.6 million at the end of the year, and core net new assets totaled \$227.8 billion, up 15% from the 2017 total. Our strong net new assets largely offset lower market valuations, and we ended 2018 at \$3.25 trillion in total client assets.

Total net revenue grew by \$1.5 billion, or 18%, in 2018 primarily due to an increase of \$1.5 billion, or 36%, in net interest revenue. The Fed raised the overnight federal funds target interest rate four times in 2018 for a total of 100 basis points. The growth of total net revenue resulted from higher interest rates due to the Fed's rate normalization, and also from higher

- 25 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

interest-earning assets, which reflect both client cash allocations and the transfer of sweep money market funds to bank and broker-dealer sweep. As we progressed with these transfers, the corresponding money market fund asset management and administration fee revenue naturally declined, yet positive inflows in advice solutions, Schwab equity and bond funds and ETFs, and other third-party mutual funds and ETFs kept asset management fees at \$3.2 billion, limiting the decrease to 5% from 2017. Record trading activity from our clients resulted in trading revenue reaching \$763 million, an increase of 17% from the prior year.

Our increase in total expenses excluding interest of \$602 million, or 12%, reflected our 2018 investments to support and fuel our business growth, including hiring additional client-facing and other employees and technology project spending, as well as an increase in marketing and a special stock award of \$36 million to our employees. Even with these increases, expenses as a percentage of client assets remained consistent at 16 basis points, and pre-tax income increased 25% to \$4.6 billion in 2018, resulting in a pre-tax profit margin of 45.0%. As a result of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (the Tax Act), taxes on income decreased 19% in 2018, resulting in an effective tax rate of 23.1%. Overall, we generated a 19% return on equity and diluted EPS of \$2.45 for the year.

During 2018, the Board of Directors raised the quarterly cash dividend 63% to \$0.13 per share and authorized a \$1.0 billion Share Repurchase Program, which we completed during the fourth quarter. These actions reflected the Company's strong financial performance and our confidence in its long-term success; they also demonstrated that effective capital management at Schwab can support both healthy business growth and more meaningful capital returns to stockholders.

2017 Compared to 2016

Net income available to common stockholders rose in 2017 by \$434 million, or 25%, from the prior year, resulting in diluted EPS of \$1.61 in 2017 – an increase of 23% compared to \$1.31 in 2016. Net revenues improved by \$1.1 billion, or 15%, while expenses excluding interest increased \$483 million, or 11%, compared to 2016.

Our steady focus on operating 'through clients' eyes' and our goal to continually challenge the status quo helped Schwab achieve another strong growth year in 2017. Clients opened 1.4 million new brokerage accounts in 2017 and trusted Schwab with \$198.6 billion of core net new assets in 2017, up 58% from 2016. Total assets receiving ongoing advisory services grew 21% in 2017 to \$1.70 trillion. Our success with clients was bolstered by strength in the equity markets – the Standard & Poor's 500 Index (S&P 500) finished 2017 up 19% from the prior year end. Also in 2017, the Federal Reserve increased the overnight federal funds target interest rate three times for a total of 75 basis points. Strong client activity and the positive economic environment resulted in total client assets rising to \$3.36 trillion as of December 31, 2017 – a 21% increase since the end of 2016.

Schwab's 2017 financial results demonstrate the power of our financial formula working as designed: our robust business growth supported strong revenue growth through multiple sources in 2017, which we combined with continued expense discipline to drive significantly improved profitability.

Net revenues grew by 15% in 2017 compared to 2016 through contributions from our two largest revenue sources. Net interest revenue rose 29% while asset management and administration fees grew 11% in 2017 when compared to the prior year. Trading revenue declined in 2017 by 21% due to price reductions announced early in 2017.

Consistent with our expectations, expenses grew 11% in 2017 compared to the prior year. This increase was primarily due to higher incentive compensation and higher staffing related to our strong asset gathering, as well as expenses related to project spending and third-party fees tied to higher balances in our asset management business.

This combination of revenue growth and expense discipline drove the pre-tax profit margin to 42.4% – an increase of 240 basis points over the prior year. Earnings before income taxes rose 22% to \$3.7 billion in 2017 compared to \$3.0 billion in the prior year.

The effective tax rate in 2017 was 35.5% compared to 36.9% in 2016 reflecting the benefit from the adoption of new accounting standards requiring the recognition of a portion of tax deductions related to equity compensation partially offset by the remeasurement of deferred tax assets and other tax adjustments associated with the 2017 enactment of the Tax Act.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Subsequent Event

On January 30, 2019, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors authorized a new Share Repurchase Program to repurchase up to \$4.0 billion of common stock, and declared a four cent, or 31%, increase in the quarterly cash dividend to \$0.17 per common share. The share repurchase authorization does not have an expiration date.

Current Regulatory Environment and Other Developments

On October 31, 2018, the Federal Reserve issued a notice of proposed rulemaking and the Federal Reserve, the OCC and the FDIC jointly issued another notice of proposed rulemaking. The two proposals would establish a revised framework for applying enhanced prudential standards to large U.S. banking organizations, with four categories of standards that reflect the risks of banking organizations in each group. CSC would be in Category III based on having \$250 billion – \$700 billion in total assets.

The Federal Reserve proposal, which would make large savings and loan holding companies such as CSC subject to enhanced prudential standards, would tailor those regulatory requirements relating to capital stress testing, risk management, liquidity risk management, and single-counterparty credit limits based on the category of the banking organization. The proposal provides that Category III banking organizations would be subject to annual supervisory stress testing and biennial company-run stress testing. The interagency proposal would similarly tailor requirements under the agencies' capital rule, LCR rule, and the proposed net stable funding ratio rule for banking organizations in each category. Under the proposal, banking organizations in Category III would not be required to calculate their risk-weighted assets using the "advanced approaches" framework or to include AOCI in calculating their regulatory capital; however, they would continue to be subject to the supplementary leverage ratio and any future countercyclical capital buffer imposed by the banking agencies.

Although the Federal Reserve announced in its proposal that additional capital planning and resolution planning proposals would be issued at a later date, the agency did indicate that all Category III firms, including savings and loan holding companies, would be required to submit annual capital plans that would be subject to qualitative and quantitative assessments evaluated as part of the CCAR process.

The comment period for both proposed rules ended on January 22, 2019 and the impact to Schwab cannot be assessed until the final rule is released.

On December 22, 2017, P.L.115-97, the Tax Act, was signed into law, and became effective on January 1, 2018. Among other things, the Tax Act lowered the federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%.

As a result of the reduction of the federal corporate income tax rate, generally accepted accounting principles in the U.S. (GAAP) require companies to remeasure their deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities as of the date of enactment, with the resulting tax effects accounted for in the reporting period of enactment. Schwab recorded a one-time non-cash charge to taxes on income associated with the remeasurement of net deferred tax assets and other tax adjustments related to the tax reform legislation in the fourth quarter of 2017. Our 2018 effective income tax rate was reduced as a result of these changes.

In May 2016, the Federal Reserve, the OCC and the FDIC jointly issued a notice of proposed rulemaking that would impose a minimum NSFR on certain banking organizations, including CSC. The comment period for the proposed rule ended on August 5, 2016 and the impact to the Company cannot be assessed until the final rule is released.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Total Net Revenues

Total net revenues of \$10.1 billion and \$8.6 billion for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, represented growth of 18% and 15% from the prior periods, primarily due to increases in net interest revenue.

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | | |
|--|--------------------------|----------|-------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| | Growth Rate 2017-2018 | Amount | % of Total Net Revenues | Amount | % of Total Net Revenues | Amount | % of Total Net Revenues |
| Net interest revenue | | | | | | | |
| Interest revenue | 44 % | \$6,680 | 66 % | \$4,624 | 54 % | \$3,493 | 46 % |
| Interest expense | 151 % | (857) | (9)% | (342) | (4)% | (171) | (2)% |
| Net interest revenue | 36 % | 5,823 | 57 % | 4,282 | 50 % | 3,322 | 44 % |
| Asset management and administration fees | | | | | | | |
| Mutual fund and ETF service fees | (12)% | 1,793 | 18 % | 2,045 | 24 % | 1,853 | 25 % |
| Advice solutions | 9 % | 1,139 | 11 % | 1,043 | 12 % | 915 | 12 % |
| Other | (2)% | 297 | 3 % | 304 | 3 % | 287 | 4 % |
| Asset management and administration fees | (5)% | 3,229 | 32 % | 3,392 | 39 % | 3,055 | 41 % |
| Trading revenue | | | | | | | |
| Commissions | 14 % | 685 | 7 % | 600 | 7 % | 779 | 10 % |
| Principal transactions | 44 % | 78 | 1 % | 54 | 1 % | 46 | 1 % |
| Trading revenue | 17 % | 763 | 8 % | 654 | 8 % | 825 | 11 % |
| Other | 9 % | 317 | 3 % | 290 | 3 % | 276 | 4 % |
| Total net revenues | 18 % | \$10,132 | 100 % | \$8,618 | 100 % | \$7,478 | 100 % |

Net Interest Revenue

Schwab's primary interest-earning assets include cash and cash equivalents; cash and investments segregated; margin loans, which constitute the majority of receivables from brokerage clients; investment securities; and bank loans. Revenue on interest-earning assets is affected by various factors, such as the composition of assets, prevailing interest rates at the time of origination or purchase, changes in interest rates on floating rate securities and loans, and changes in prepayment levels for mortgage-related securities and loans. Fees earned on securities borrowing and lending activities, which are conducted by CS&Co using assets held in client brokerage accounts, are included in other interest revenue and expense.

Schwab's interest-bearing liabilities include bank deposits, payables to brokerage clients, short-term borrowings, and long-term debt. We establish the rates paid on client-related liabilities, and management expects that it will generally adjust the rates paid on these liabilities at some fraction of any movement in short-term rates. During 2018, these liabilities rose by a total of \$63.3 billion, largely reflecting the effect of: our transferring a total of \$72 billion sweep money market funds to bank and broker-dealer sweep; clients choosing to reallocate assets between cash, equities, fixed income and other investments; and the Company gathering additional flows from new and current clients.

Overall, management believes that the extended period of extraordinarily low interest rates running from the financial crisis until recently has likely resulted in certain sweep cash balances retaining some level of latent rate sensitivity. With the Federal Funds Target Rate having increased to 2.25 – 2.50%, management expects some sweep cash balances could migrate to alternatives, including purchased money market funds, that offer higher yields to clients but lower revenue to Schwab.

Given the general stability and relatively low rate sensitivity of client-related liabilities, management believes their duration is at least several years. We have positioned Schwab to benefit from an increase in interest rates, especially short-term interest rates, by managing the duration of interest-earning assets to be shorter than that of interest-bearing liabilities, so that asset yields are expected to move faster than liability costs.

- 28 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

In order to keep interest-rate sensitivity within established limits, management monitors and responds to changes in the balance sheet. As Schwab builds its client base, we attract new client sweep cash, which, along with the transfers of existing sweep cash balances from money market funds, is a primary driver of balance sheet growth. By managing the duration of interest-earning assets as necessary, we are positioned to continue to gain from increasing rates while limiting exposure to falling rates to an acceptable level. Approximately half of our interest earning assets re-price or reset based on short-term interest rates such as one-month LIBOR.

Non-interest-bearing funding sources include certain cash balances, stockholders' equity and other miscellaneous assets and liabilities.

The following table presents net interest revenue information corresponding to interest-earning assets and funding sources on the consolidated balance sheets:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | | | 2017 | | | 2016 | | |
|--|--------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| | Average Balance | Interest Revenue/ Expense | Average Yield/ Rate | Average Balance | Interest Revenue/ Expense | Average Yield/ Rate | Average Balance | Interest Revenue/ Expense | Average Yield/ Rate |
| Interest-earning assets | | | | | | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$17,783 | \$ 348 | 1.93 % | \$9,931 | \$ 109 | 1.10 % | \$11,143 | \$ 57 | 0.51 % |
| Cash and investments segregated | 11,461 | 206 | 1.78 % | 18,525 | 166 | 0.90 % | 20,104 | 93 | 0.46 % |
| Broker-related receivables | 303 | 6 | 2.09 % | 430 | 3 | 0.70 % | 558 | 1 | 0.22 % |
| Receivables from brokerage clients | 19,870 | 830 | 4.12 % | 16,269 | 575 | 3.53 % | 15,001 | 497 | 3.31 % |
| Available for sale securities ⁽¹⁾ | 54,542 | 1,241 | 2.26 % | 53,040 | 815 | 1.54 % | 72,586 | 883 | 1.22 % |
| Held to maturity securities | 131,794 | 3,348 | 2.53 % | 103,599 | 2,354 | 2.27 % | 57,451 | 1,402 | 2.44 % |
| Bank loans | 16,554 | 559 | 3.37 % | 15,919 | 472 | 2.97 % | 14,715 | 400 | 2.72 % |
| Total interest-earning assets | 252,307 | 6,538 | 2.57 % | 217,713 | 4,494 | 2.06 % | 191,558 | 3,333 | 1.74 % |
| Other interest revenue | | 142 | | | 130 | | | 160 | |
| Total interest-earning assets | \$252,307 | \$ 6,680 | 2.63 % | \$217,713 | \$ 4,624 | 2.12 % | \$191,558 | \$ 3,493 | 1.82 % |
| Funding sources | | | | | | | | | |
| Bank deposits | \$199,139 | \$ 545 | 0.27 % | \$163,998 | \$ 148 | 0.09 % | \$141,432 | \$ 37 | 0.03 % |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 21,178 | 56 | 0.27 % | 25,403 | 16 | 0.06 % | 26,311 | 3 | 0.01 % |
| Short-term borrowings | 3,359 | 54 | 1.59 % | 3,503 | 41 | 1.17 % | 1,864 | 9 | 0.48 % |
| Long-term debt | 5,423 | 190 | 3.50 % | 3,431 | 119 | 3.47 % | 2,876 | 104 | 3.62 % |
| Total interest-bearing liabilities | 229,099 | 845 | 0.37 % | 196,335 | 324 | 0.17 % | 172,483 | 153 | 0.09 % |
| Non-interest-bearing funding sources | | | | | | | | | |
| Other interest expense | | 12 | | | 18 | | | 18 | |
| Total funding sources | \$252,307 | \$ 857 | 0.34 % | \$217,713 | \$ 342 | 0.15 % | \$191,558 | \$ 171 | 0.09 % |
| Net interest revenue | | \$ 5,823 | 2.29 % | | \$ 4,282 | 1.97 % | | \$ 3,322 | 1.73 % |

⁽¹⁾ Amounts have been calculated based on amortized cost.

Net interest revenue increased \$1.5 billion or 36%, in 2018 from 2017, and \$960 million, or 29%, in 2017 from 2016, primarily due to higher interest rates and growth in interest-earning assets.

Our net interest margin improved 32 basis points to 2.29% in 2018, primarily as a result of the Federal Reserve's 2017 and 2018 interest rate increases, partially offset by higher interest rates paid on bank deposits and other interest-bearing liabilities. Our net interest margin was 1.97% in 2017, representing an improvement of 24 basis points compared to 2016, primarily due to the Federal Reserve's interest rate increases in 2016 and 2017.

Average interest earning assets grew 16% and 14% during 2018 and 2017, respectively, compared with the sequential prior years. These increases primarily reflect higher bank deposits due to transfers from sweep money market funds to bank sweep balances, as well as changes in client cash allocations, partially offset by client purchases of other assets.

In March 2017, \$24.7 billion of debt securities were transferred from the AFS category to the HTM category. The transfer had no effect on the overall net interest margin. For additional information on the transfer, see Item 8 – Note 6.

- 29 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Asset Management and Administration Fees

Asset management and administration fees include mutual fund and ETF service fees and fees for other asset-based financial services provided to individual and institutional clients. Schwab earns mutual fund and ETF service fees for shareholder services, administration, and investment management provided to its proprietary funds, and recordkeeping and shareholder services provided to third-party funds. Asset management and administration fees are based upon the daily balances of client assets invested in these funds and do not include securities lending revenues earned by proprietary mutual funds and ETFs, as those amounts, net of program fees, are credited to the fund shareholders. The fair values of client assets included in proprietary and third-party mutual funds and ETFs are based on quoted market prices and other observable market data.

We also earn asset management fees for advice solutions, which include managed portfolios, specialized strategies, and customized investment advice. Other asset management and administration fees include various asset-based fees such as trust fees, 401(k) recordkeeping fees, mutual fund clearing fees, collective trust fund fees, and non-balance based service and transaction fees.

Asset management and administration fees vary with changes in the balances of client assets due to market fluctuations and client activity.

The following table presents asset management and administration fees, average client assets, and average fee yields:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | | | 2017 | | | 2016 | | |
|--|-----------------------|---------|-------------|-----------------------|---------|-------------|-----------------------|---------|-------------|
| | Average Client Assets | Revenue | Average Fee | Average Client Assets | Revenue | Average Fee | Average Client Assets | Revenue | Average Fee |
| Schwab money market funds before fee | \$ 141,018 | \$ 568 | 0.40 % | \$ 160,735 | \$ 875 | 0.54 % | \$ 164,120 | \$ 962 | 0.59 % |
| waivers | | | | | | | | | |
| Fee waivers | | — | | | (10) | | | (224) | |
| Schwab money market funds | 141,018 | 568 | 0.40 % | 160,735 | 865 | 0.54 % | 164,120 | 738 | 0.45 % |
| Schwab equity and bond funds and ETFs | 207,385 | 258 | 0.12 % | 158,625 | 223 | 0.14 % | 115,849 | 217 | 0.19 % |
| Mutual Fund OneSource® and other non-transaction fee funds | 210,429 | 680 | 0.32 % | 215,333 | 706 | 0.33 % | 199,389 | 676 | 0.34 % |
| Other third-party mutual funds and ETFs ⁽¹⁾ | 328,150 | 287 | 0.09 % | 286,111 | 251 | 0.09 % | 254,584 | 222 | 0.09 % |
| Total mutual funds and ETFs ⁽²⁾ | \$ 886,982 | 1,793 | 0.20 % | \$ 820,804 | 2,045 | 0.25 % | \$ 733,942 | 1,853 | 0.25 % |
| Advice solutions ⁽²⁾ | | | | | | | | | |
| Fee-based | \$ 227,790 | 1,139 | 0.50 % | \$ 203,794 | 1,043 | 0.51 % | \$ 177,409 | 915 | 0.52 % |
| Non-fee-based | 62,813 | — | — | 48,936 | — | — | 35,262 | — | — |
| Total advice solutions | \$ 290,603 | 1,139 | 0.39 % | \$ 252,730 | 1,043 | 0.41 % | \$ 212,671 | 915 | 0.43 % |
| Other balance-based fees ⁽³⁾ | 398,495 | 250 | 0.06 % | 417,659 | 258 | 0.06 % | 339,071 | 235 | 0.07 % |
| Other ⁽⁴⁾ | | 47 | | | 46 | | | 52 | |

| | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Total asset management and administration fees | \$ 3,229 | \$ 3,392 | \$ 3,055 |
|--|----------|----------|----------|

(1) Includes Schwab ETF OneSource™

(2) Beginning in the fourth quarter of 2017, a change was made to add non-fee based average assets from managed portfolios. Average client assets for advice solutions may also include the asset balances contained in the mutual fund and/or ETF categories listed above. Prior periods have been adjusted to accommodate this change.

(3) Includes various asset-related fees, such as trust fees, 401(k) recordkeeping fees, and mutual fund clearing fees and other service fees. Beginning in the first quarter of 2017, a prospective methodology change was made to average client assets relating to 401(k) recordkeeping fees to provide improved insight into the associated fee driver, which resulted in an increase of approximately \$25 billion. There was no impact to revenue or the average fee.

(4) Includes miscellaneous service and transaction fees relating to mutual funds and ETFs that are not balance-based.

Asset management and administration fees decreased by \$163 million, or 5%, in 2018 from 2017, primarily due to lower money market fund revenue as a result of transfers to bank sweep, client asset allocation choices, and our 2017 fee reductions. Part of the decline was offset by revenue from growing asset balances in advice solutions, Schwab equity and bond funds and ETFs, and other third-party mutual funds and ETFs.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Asset management and administration fees increased by \$337 million, or 11%, in 2017 from 2016 due to higher average client assets invested in advice solutions, mutual funds and ETFs, and lower fee waivers on money market funds. Partially offsetting these increases were lower fee rates on proprietary money funds and other indexed mutual funds and ETFs due to fee reductions implemented by Schwab in 2017.

The following table presents a roll forward of client assets for the Schwab money market funds, Schwab equity and bond funds and ETFs, and Mutual Fund OneSource® and other non-transaction fee (NTF) funds. The following funds generated 47%, 53%, and 53% of the asset management and administration fees earned during 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively:

| Year Ended December 31, | Schwab Money Market Funds | | | Schwab Equity and Bond Funds and ETFs | | | Mutual Fund OneSource® and Other NTF Funds | | |
|--|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|--|-----------|-----------|---|-----------|-----------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Balance at beginning of period | \$163,650 | \$163,495 | \$166,148 | \$181,608 | \$125,813 | \$102,112 | \$225,202 | \$198,924 | \$207,654 |
| Net inflows (outflows) | (11,641) | (486) | (2,765) | 31,091 | 30,771 | 13,858 | (37,513) | (27,485) | (22,469) |
| Net market gains (losses) and other ⁽¹⁾ | 1,463 | 641 | 112 | (17,589) | 25,024 | 9,843 | (7,157) | 53,763 | 13,739 |
| Balance at end of period | \$153,472 | \$163,650 | \$163,495 | \$195,110 | \$181,608 | \$125,813 | \$180,532 | \$225,202 | \$198,924 |

⁽¹⁾ Includes net inflows from other third-party mutual funds to Mutual Fund OneSource® in the second quarter of 2017.

Trading Revenue

Trading revenue includes commission and principal transaction revenues. Commission revenue is affected by the number of revenue trades executed and the average revenue earned per revenue trade. Principal transaction revenue is primarily comprised of revenue from trading activity in fixed income securities with clients. To accommodate clients' fixed income trading activity, Schwab maintains positions in fixed income securities, including U.S. state and municipal debt obligations, U.S. Government and corporate debt, and other securities. The difference between the price at which the Company buys and sells securities to and from its clients and other broker-dealers is recognized as principal transaction revenue. Principal transaction revenue also includes adjustments to the fair value of these securities positions.

The following table presents trading revenue and the related drivers:

| Year Ended December 31, | Growth Rate 2017-2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|--|--------------------------|-----------|--------|---------|
| DARTs (in thousands) | 31 | % 420.9 | 321.3 | 291.6 |
| Clients' daily average trades (in thousands) | 26 | % 765.4 | 608.8 | 561.8 |
| Number of trading days | — | 249.5 | 250.0 | 251.5 |
| Daily average revenue per revenue trade | (12 |)% \$7.23 | \$8.20 | \$11.23 |
| Trading revenue | 17 | % \$763 | \$654 | \$825 |

Trading revenue increased by \$109 million, or 17%, in 2018 compared to 2017. DART volumes increased 31% in 2018, which more than offset Schwab's commission pricing reductions implemented in the first quarter of 2017. Trading revenue decreased by \$171 million in 2017 from 2016, primarily due to lower commissions rates on DARTs.

During the first quarter of 2017, we announced two trading price reductions which lowered standard equity, ETF, and option trade commissions from \$8.95 to \$4.95 and lowered the per contract option fee from \$.75 to \$.65. These reductions in commission rates reflect our continuing belief that pricing should never be an obstacle for choosing Schwab and our commitment to share the benefits of scale with clients.

With these changes, trading revenue has declined from a peak of 50%-60% of total revenue in the early 1990's to the current low of 8% in 2018, 8% in 2017, and 11% in 2016.

Other Revenue

Other revenue includes order flow revenue, other service fees, software fees from our portfolio management solutions, exchange processing fees, and non-recurring gains. Order flow revenue was \$139 million during 2018, \$114 million for 2017, and \$103 million in 2016. These increases were primarily due to higher rebate rates received on certain types of

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

orders and higher volume of trades. In 2016, other revenue also included net litigation proceeds of \$16 million related to our non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities portfolios.

Total Expenses Excluding Interest

The following table shows a comparison of total expenses excluding interest:

| | Growth | | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | |
|--|-----------|---|---------|---------|---------|---|
| | Rate | | | | | |
| | 2017-2018 | | | | | |
| Compensation and benefits | | | | | | |
| Salaries and wages | 13 | % | \$1,692 | \$1,496 | \$1,368 | |
| Incentive compensation | 7 | % | 855 | 797 | 689 | |
| Employee benefits and other | 15 | % | 510 | 444 | 409 | |
| Total compensation and benefits | 12 | % | \$3,057 | \$2,737 | \$2,466 | |
| Professional services | 13 | % | 654 | 580 | 506 | |
| Occupancy and equipment | 14 | % | 496 | 436 | 398 | |
| Advertising and market development | 17 | % | 313 | 268 | 265 | |
| Communications | 5 | % | 242 | 231 | 237 | |
| Depreciation and amortization | 14 | % | 306 | 269 | 234 | |
| Regulatory fees and assessments | 6 | % | 189 | 179 | 144 | |
| Other | 17 | % | 313 | 268 | 235 | |
| Total expenses excluding interest | 12 | % | \$5,570 | \$4,968 | \$4,485 | |
| Expenses as a percentage of total net revenues | | | | | | |
| Compensation and benefits | | | 30 | % 32 | % 33 | % |
| Advertising and market development | | | 3 | % 3 | % 4 | % |
| Full-time equivalent employees (in thousands) | | | | | | |
| At year end | 11 | % | 19.5 | 17.6 | 16.2 | |
| Average | 11 | % | 18.7 | 16.9 | 15.9 | |

Expenses excluding interest increased in 2018 and 2017 from the prior years by 12% and 11%, respectively. The largest drivers of the increase in both years were compensation and benefits and professional services.

Total compensation and benefits increased in 2018 and 2017 from prior years, primarily due to increases in employee headcount to support our expanding client base. Additionally, in 2018 non-officer employees were issued special stock awards totaling \$36 million.

Professional services expense increased in 2018 and 2017 from the prior years, primarily due to higher spending on technology projects as well as an increase in asset management and administration related expenses resulting from growth in the Schwab Funds® and Schwab ETFs™.

Occupancy and equipment expense increased in 2018 and 2017 from the prior years, primarily due to an increase in software maintenance expenses and additional licenses to support growth in the business.

Advertising and market development expense rose in 2018, primarily reflecting management's decision to increase television advertising and digital media spending in the fourth quarter.

Depreciation and amortization expenses grew in 2018 and 2017 from the prior years, primarily due to higher amortization of internally developed software associated with our investments in software and technology enhancements.

- 32 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Regulatory fees assessments increased in 2018 and 2017 from the prior years, due to an increase in FDIC insurance assessments which rose as a result of higher average assets in deposit balances. This increase in 2018 was partially offset by the elimination of the FDIC surcharge in the fourth quarter of 2018.

Other expenses increased in 2018 from 2017 due to travel and entertainment and miscellaneous items due to overall growth in our business. Other expenses increased in 2017 from 2016 due to travel and entertainment, asset volume-related increases, and some miscellaneous items.

Capital expenditures were \$576 million, \$412 million, and \$353 million in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively. The increase in capital expenditures in both 2018 and 2017 from the prior years was primarily due to the expansion of our campuses in the U.S. and investments in technology projects. The largest component of capital expenditures in 2018 was investment in buildings of \$253 million. Capitalized costs for developing internal-use software totaled \$167 million, \$157 million, and \$130 million in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively. Our capital expenditures for 2018 came in at the lower end of our estimated range of 6-7% of total net revenues, largely due to the timing of our campus expansion work. As we carry this work forward in 2019 and invest further in technology projects, we anticipate capital expenditures for the year will reach approximately 7-9% of total net revenues. Our longer term expectation for capital expenditures remains in the range of 3-5% of total net revenues.

Taxes on Income

As previously discussed under Current Regulatory Environment and Other Developments, the Tax Act was signed into law during 2017. Among other things, the Tax Act lowered the federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, beginning in 2018.

Also as a result of the Tax Act, Schwab recognized a \$46 million one-time non-cash charge to taxes on income in the fourth quarter of 2017 associated with the remeasurement of net deferred tax assets and other tax adjustments related to the Tax Act.

Effective January 1, 2017, Schwab adopted Accounting Standards Update (ASU) 2016-09, which prospectively changed the accounting treatment of a portion of the tax deductions relating to equity compensation. These deductions were previously reflected directly in additional paid-in capital, a component of stockholders' equity, and are now included in taxes on income, a component of net income. As a result of this change, our tax expense was reduced by approximately \$46 million and \$87 million in 2018 and 2017, respectively. Future effects will depend on our share price, restricted stock vesting, and the volume of equity incentive options exercised.

Schwab's effective income tax rate on income before taxes was 23.1% in 2018, 35.5% in 2017, and 36.9% in 2016. The decrease in rates over this three-year time period was primarily due to the net impact of the above items.

Segment Information

Schwab provides financial services to individuals and institutional clients through two segments – Investor Services and Advisor Services. The Investor Services segment provides retail brokerage and banking services, retirement plan services, and other corporate brokerage services to individual investors. The Advisor Services segment provides custodial, trading, banking, and support services as well as retirement business services to independent RIAs, independent retirement advisors and recordkeepers. Revenues and expenses are attributed to the two segments based

on which segment services the client. Management evaluates the performance of the segments on a pre-tax basis. Segment assets and liabilities are not used for evaluating segment performance or in deciding how to allocate resources to segments. Net revenues in both segments are generated from the underlying client assets and trading activity; differences in the composition of net revenues between the segments are based on the composition of client assets, client trading frequency, and pricing unique to each. While both segments leverage the scale and efficiency of our platforms, segment expenses reflect the dynamics of serving millions of clients in Investor Services versus the thousands of RIAs on the advisor platform.

- 33 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Financial information for our segments is presented in the following table:

| Year Ended December 31, | Investor Services | | | Advisor Services | | | Total | | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|---------|---------|------------------|--------------------------|---------|---------|-------|--------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| | Growth Rate 2017-2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | Growth Rate 2017-2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | Growth Rate 2017-2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Net Revenues | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net interest revenue | 34% | \$4,341 | \$3,231 | \$2,591 | 41% | \$1,482 | \$1,051 | \$731 | 36% | \$5,823 | \$4,282 | \$3,322 |
| Asset management and administration fees | (4)% | 2,260 | 2,344 | 2,093 | (8)% | 969 | 1,048 | 962 | (5)% | 3,229 | 3,392 | 3,055 |
| Trading revenue | 16% | 475 | 408 | 524 | 17% | 288 | 246 | 301 | 17% | 763 | 654 | 825 |
| Other | 13% | 245 | 217 | 203 | (1)% | 72 | 73 | 73 | 9% | 317 | 290 | 276 |
| Total net revenues | 18% | 7,321 | 6,200 | 5,411 | 16% | 2,811 | 2,418 | 2,067 | 18% | 10,132 | 8,618 | 7,478 |
| Expenses Excluding Interest | 11% | 4,145 | 3,725 | 3,380 | 15% | 1,425 | 1,243 | 1,105 | 12% | 5,570 | 4,968 | 4,485 |
| Income before taxes on income | 28% | \$3,176 | \$2,475 | \$2,031 | 18% | \$1,386 | \$1,175 | \$962 | 25% | \$4,562 | \$3,650 | \$2,993 |

Investor Services

Total net revenues increased by \$1.1 billion, or 18%, in 2018 from 2017 primarily due to an increase in net interest revenue, partially offset by lower asset management and administration fees. Net interest revenue increased primarily due to higher net interest margins and higher balances of interest-earning assets. Asset management and administration fees decreased primarily due to lower money market fund revenue as a result of transfers to bank sweep, client asset allocation choices, and our 2017 fee reductions. Expenses excluding interest increased by \$420 million, or 11%, in 2018 from 2017 primarily due to higher compensation and benefits, technology project spend, and asset management and administration related expenses to support our expanding client base.

Total net revenues increased by \$789 million, or 15%, in 2017 from 2016 primarily due to increases in net interest revenue and asset management and administration fees, partially offset by a decrease in trading revenue. Net interest revenue increased primarily due to higher net interest margins and higher balances of interest-earning assets. Asset management and administration fees increased primarily due to higher client assets enrolled in advisory solutions and higher net fees on money market fund assets. Trading revenue decreased primarily due to lower commission rates. Expenses excluding interest increased by \$345 million, or 10%, in 2017 from 2016 primarily due to higher compensation and benefits, technology project spend, asset management and administration related expenses, and regulatory fee assessments.

Advisor Services

Total net revenues increased by \$393 million or 16%, in 2018 from 2017 primarily due to an increase in net interest revenue, partially offset by lower asset management and administration fees. Net interest revenue increased primarily due to higher net interest margins and higher balances of interest-earning assets. Asset management and administration fees decreased primarily due to lower money market fund revenue as a result of transfers to bank sweep, client asset allocation choices, and our 2017 fee reductions. Expenses excluding interest increased by \$182 million, or 15%, in 2018 from 2017 primarily due to higher compensation and benefits, technology project spend, and asset management and administration related expenses to support our expanding client base.

Total net revenues increased by \$351 million, or 17%, in 2017 from 2016 primarily due to increases in net interest revenue and asset management and administration fees, partially offset by a decrease in trading revenue. Net interest revenue increased primarily due to higher balances of interest-earning assets and higher net interest margins. Asset management and administration fees increased primarily due to higher fees from growth in client assets invested in ETFs and equity and bond funds, and higher net fees on money market fund assets. Trading revenue decreased primarily due to lower commission rates. Expenses excluding interest increased by \$138 million, or 12%, in 2017 from 2016 primarily due to higher compensation and benefits, technology project spend, asset management and administration related expenses, and regulatory fee assessments.

- 34 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

RISK MANAGEMENT

Schwab's business activities expose it to a variety of risks, including operational, credit, market, liquidity, and compliance risks. The Company has a comprehensive risk management program to identify and manage these risks and their associated potential for financial and reputational impact. Despite our efforts to identify areas of risk and implement risk management policies and procedures, there can be no assurance that Schwab will not suffer unexpected losses due to these risks.

Our risk management process is comprised of risk identification and assessment, risk measurement, risk monitoring and reporting, and risk mitigation. The activities and governance that comprise the risk management process are described below.

Culture

The Board of Directors has approved an Enterprise Risk Management (ERM) framework that incorporates our purpose, vision, and values, which form the bedrock of our corporate culture and set the tone for the organization.

We designed the ERM Framework to enable a comprehensive approach to managing risks encountered by Schwab in its business activities. The framework incorporates key concepts commensurate with the size, risk profile, complexity, and continuing growth of the Company. Risk appetite, which is defined as the amount of risk the Company is willing to accept in pursuit of its corporate strategy, is developed by executive management and approved by the Board of Directors.

Risk Governance

Senior management takes an active role in the risk management process and has developed policies and procedures under which specific business and control units are responsible for identifying, measuring, and controlling risks.

The Global Risk Committee, which is comprised of senior executives from each major business and control function, is responsible for the oversight of risk management. This includes identifying emerging risks, assessing risk management practices and the control environment, reinforcing business accountability for risk management, supervisory controls and regulatory compliance, supporting resource prioritization across the organization, and escalating significant issues to the Board of Directors.

We have established risk metrics and reporting that enable measurement of the impact of strategy execution against risk appetite. The risk metrics, with risk limits and tolerance levels, are established for key risk categories by the Global Risk Committee and its functional risk sub-committees.

The Chief Risk Officer regularly reports activities of the Global Risk Committee to the Risk Committee of the Board of Directors. The Board Risk Committee in turn assists the Board of Directors in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities with respect to our risk management program, including approving risk appetite statements and related key risk appetite metrics and reviewing reports relating to risk issues from functional areas of risk management, legal, compliance, and internal audit.

Functional risk sub-committees focusing on specific areas of risk report to the Global Risk Committee. These sub-committees include the:

- Compliance Risk Committee – provides oversight of compliance risk management programs and policies providing an aggregate view of compliance risk exposure, and includes a subcommittee covering Fiduciary Risk;

- Financial Risk Oversight Committee – provides oversight of and approves capital, credit, liquidity, and market risk policies, limits, and exposures;

- New Products and Services Risk Oversight Committee – provides oversight of, and approves corporate policy and procedures relating to the risk governance of new products and services; and

- Operational Risk Oversight Committee – provides oversight of and approves operational risk management policies, risk tolerance levels, and operational risk governance processes, and includes sub-committees covering Fraud, Data, Information Security, Model Governance, and Third-Party risk.

- 35 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Senior management has also created an Incentive Compensation Risk Oversight Committee, which establishes policy and reviews and approves the Annual Risk Assessment of incentive compensation plans, and reports directly to the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors.

The Company's compliance, finance, internal audit, legal, and corporate risk management departments assist management and the various risk committees in evaluating, testing, and monitoring risk management.

In addition, the Disclosure Committee is responsible for monitoring and evaluating the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting as of the end of each fiscal quarter. The Disclosure Committee reports on this evaluation to the CEO and CFO prior to their certification required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002.

Operational Risk

Operational risks arise due to potential inadequacies or failures related to people, internal processes, and systems, or from external events or relationships impacting the Company and/or any of its key business partners and third parties. While operational risk is inherent in all business activities, we rely on a system of internal controls and risk management practices designed to keep operational risk and operational losses within the Company's risk appetite. We have specific policies and procedures to identify and manage operational risk, and use periodic risk and control self-assessments, control testing programs, and internal audit reviews to evaluate the effectiveness of these internal controls. Where appropriate, we manage the impact of operational loss and litigation expense through the purchase of insurance. The insurance program is specifically designed to address our key operational risks and to maintain compliance with local laws and regulation.

Schwab's operations are highly dependent on the integrity and resilience of our critical business functions and technology systems. To the extent Schwab experiences business or system interruptions, errors or downtime (which could result from a variety of causes, including natural disasters, terrorist attacks, technological failure, cyber attacks, changes to systems, linkages with third-party systems, and power failures), our business and operations could be negatively impacted. To minimize business interruptions and ensure the capacity to continue operations during an incident regardless of duration, Schwab maintains a backup and recovery infrastructure which includes facilities for backup and communications, a geographically dispersed workforce, and routine testing of business continuity and disaster recovery plans and a well-established incident management program.

Information Security risk is the risk of unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, recording or destruction of the firm's information or systems. We have designed and implemented an information security program that knits together complementary tools, controls and technologies to protect systems, client accounts and data. We continuously monitor the systems and work collaboratively with government agencies, law enforcement and other financial institutions to address potential threats. We use advanced monitoring systems to identify suspicious activity and deter unauthorized access by internal or external actors. We limit the number of employees who have access to clients' personal information and internal authentication measures are enforced to protect against the potential for social engineering. All employees who handle sensitive information are trained in privacy and security. Schwab's fraud and cyber security teams monitor activity looking for suspicious behavior. These capabilities allow us to identify and quickly act on any attempted intrusions.

Schwab also faces operational risk when we employ the services of various third parties, including domestic and international outsourcing of certain technology, processing, servicing, and support functions. We manage the exposure

to third party risk and promote a culture of resiliency through contractual provisions, control standards, ongoing monitoring of third party performance, and appropriate testing. We maintain policies and procedures regarding the standard of care expected with all data, whether the data is internal company information, employee information, or non-public client information. We clearly define for employees, contractors, and third parties the expected standards of care for confidential data. We also provide regular training on data security.

Model risk is the potential for adverse consequences from decisions based on incorrect or misused model outputs and reports. Models are owned by several business units throughout the organization, and are used for a variety of purposes. Model use includes, but is not limited to, calculating capital requirements for hypothetical stressful environments, estimating interest and credit risk for loans and other balance sheet assets, and providing guidance in the management of client portfolios. We have established a policy to describe the roles and responsibilities of all key stakeholders in model development, management, and use. All models are registered in a centralized database and classified into different risk

- 36 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

ratings depending on their potential financial, reputational, or regulatory impact to the Company. The model risk rating determines the scope of model governance activities.

Compliance Risk

Schwab faces compliance risk which is the potential exposure to legal or regulatory sanctions, fines or penalties, financial loss, or damage to reputation resulting from the failure to comply with laws, regulations, rules, or other regulatory requirements. Among other things, compliance risks relate to the suitability of client investments, conflicts of interest, disclosure obligations and performance expectations for products and services, supervision of employees, and the adequacy of our controls. The Company and its affiliates are subject to extensive regulation by federal, state and foreign regulatory authorities, including SROs.

We manage compliance risk through policies, procedures and controls reasonably designed to achieve and/or monitor compliance with applicable legal and regulatory requirements. These procedures address issues such as business conduct and ethics, sales and trading practices, marketing and communications, extension of credit, client funds and securities, books and records, anti-money laundering, client privacy, and employment policies.

Fiduciary risk is the potential for financial or reputational loss through breach of fiduciary duties to a client. Fiduciary activities include, but are not limited to, individual and institutional trust, investment management, custody, and cash and securities processing. We manage this risk by establishing policy and procedures to ensure that obligations to clients are discharged faithfully and in compliance with applicable legal and regulatory requirements. Business units have the primary responsibility for adherence to the policy and procedures applicable to their business. Guidance and control are provided through the creation, approval, and ongoing review of applicable policies by business units and various risk committees.

Credit Risk

Credit risk is the potential for loss due to a borrower, counterparty, or issuer failing to perform on its contractual obligations. Our exposure to credit risk mainly results from investing activities in our liquidity and investment portfolios, mortgage lending, margin lending and client option and futures activities, pledged asset lending, securities lending activities, and our role as a counterparty in other financial contracts. To manage the risks of such losses, we have established policies and procedures, which include establishing and reviewing credit limits, monitoring of credit limits and quality of counterparties, and adjusting margin, PAL, option, and futures requirements for certain securities and instruments.

Liquidity and Investment Portfolios

Schwab has exposure to credit risk associated with its investment portfolios, which include U.S. agency, and non-agency mortgage-backed securities, asset-backed securities, corporate debt securities, U.S. agency notes, U.S. Treasury securities, certificates of deposit, U.S. state and municipal securities, commercial paper, and foreign government agency securities.

At December 31, 2018, substantially all securities in the investment portfolios were rated investment grade. U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities do not have explicit credit ratings; however, management considers these to be of the highest credit quality and rating given the guarantee of principal and interest by the U.S. government or U.S.

government-sponsored enterprises.

Mortgage Lending Portfolio

The bank loan portfolio includes First Mortgages, HELOCs, and other loans. The credit risk exposure related to loans is actively managed through individual loan and portfolio reviews. Management regularly reviews asset quality, including concentrations, delinquencies, nonaccrual loans, charge-offs, and recoveries. All are factors in the determination of an appropriate allowance for loan losses.

Our residential loan underwriting guidelines include maximum LTV ratios, cash out limits, and minimum Fair Isaac Corporation (FICO) credit scores. The specific guidelines are dependent on the individual characteristics of a loan (for example, whether the property is a primary or secondary residence, whether the loan is for investment property, whether the loan is for an initial purchase of a home or refinance of an existing home, and whether the loan size is conforming or jumbo).

- 37 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Schwab does not originate or purchase residential loans that allow for negative amortization and does not originate or purchase subprime loans (generally defined as extensions of credit to borrowers with a FICO score of less than 620 at origination), unless the borrower has compensating credit factors. For more information on credit quality indicators relating to Schwab's bank loans, see Item 8 – Note 7.

Securities and Instrument-Based Lending Portfolios

Collateral arrangements relating to margin loans, PALs, option and futures positions, securities lending agreements, and resale agreements include provisions that require additional collateral in the event of market fluctuations. Additionally, for margin loans, PALs, options and futures positions, and securities lending agreements, collateral arrangements require that the fair value of such collateral sufficiently exceeds the credit exposure in order to maintain a fully secured position.

Other Counterparty Exposures

Schwab performs clearing services for all securities transactions in its client accounts. Schwab has exposure to credit risk due to its obligation to settle transactions with clearing corporations, mutual funds, and other financial institutions even if Schwab's clients or a counterparty fail to meet their obligations to Schwab.

Market Risk

Market risk is the potential for changes in earnings or the value of financial instruments held by Schwab as a result of fluctuations in interest rates, equity prices, or market conditions. We are exposed to interest rate risk primarily from changes in market interest rates on our interest-earning assets relative to changes in the costs of its funding sources that finance these assets.

Net interest revenue is affected by various factors, such as the distribution and composition of interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities, the spread between yields earned on interest-earning assets and rates paid on interest-bearing liabilities, which may reprice at different times or by different amounts, and the spread between short and long-term interest rates. Interest-earning assets primarily include investment securities, margin loans and bank loans. These assets are sensitive to changes in interest rates and changes in prepayment levels that tend to increase in a declining rate environment and decrease in a rising rate environment. Because we establish the rates paid on certain brokerage client cash balances and bank deposits and the rates charged on certain margin and bank loans, and control the composition of our investment securities, we have some ability to manage our net interest spread, depending on competitive factors and market conditions.

To mitigate the risk of declining interest revenue, we have established policies and procedures, which include setting guidelines on the amount of net interest revenue at risk, and monitoring the net interest margin and average maturity of our interest-earning assets and funding sources. To remain within these guidelines, we manage the maturity, repricing, and cash flow characteristics of the investment portfolios.

Financial instruments are also subject to the risk that valuations will be negatively affected by changes in demand and the underlying market for a financial instrument. We are indirectly exposed to option, futures, and equity market fluctuations in connection with client option and futures accounts, securities collateralizing margin loans to brokerage customers, and client securities loaned out as part of the brokerage securities lending activities. Equity market

valuations may also affect the level of brokerage client trading activity, margin borrowing, and overall client engagement with Schwab. Additionally, we earn mutual fund and ETF service fees and asset management fees based upon daily balances of certain client assets. Fluctuations in these client asset balances caused by changes in equity valuations directly impact the amount of fee revenue we earn.

Our market risk related to financial instruments held for trading is not material.

Net Interest Revenue Simulation

For Schwab's net interest revenue sensitivity analysis, we use net interest revenue simulation modeling techniques to evaluate and manage the effect of changing interest rates. The simulation includes all interest-sensitive assets and liabilities. Key variables in the simulation include the repricing of financial instruments, prepayment, reinvestment, and product pricing assumptions. The simulations involve assumptions that are inherently uncertain and, as a result, cannot precisely estimate the impact of changes in interest rates on net interest revenue. Actual results may differ from simulated results due

- 38 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

to balance growth or decline and the timing, magnitude, and frequency of interest rate changes, as well as changes in market conditions and management strategies, including changes in asset and liability mix.

If our guidelines for net interest revenue sensitivity are breached, management must report the breach to the Financial Risk Oversight Committee and establish a plan to address the interest rate risk. There were no breaches of Schwab’s net interest revenue sensitivity risk limits during the years ended December 31, 2018 or 2017.

As represented by the simulations presented below, our investment strategy is structured to produce an increase in net interest revenue when interest rates rise and, conversely, a decrease in net interest revenue when interest rates fall.

The simulations in the following table assume that the asset and liability structure of the consolidated balance sheets would not be changed as a result of the simulated changes in interest rates. As we actively manage the consolidated balance sheets and interest rate exposure, in all likelihood we would take steps to manage additional interest rate exposure that could result from changes in the interest rate environment. The following table shows the simulated net interest revenue change over the next 12 months beginning December 31, 2018 and 2017 of a gradual 100 basis point increase or decrease in market interest rates relative to prevailing market rates at the end of each reporting period.

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|------------------------------|---------|---------|
| Increase of 100 basis points | 4.4 % | 3.3 % |
| Decrease of 100 basis points | (4.9)% | (6.2)% |

The year-over-year change in net interest revenue sensitivities reflects higher interest rates across the yield curve, and particularly, higher short-term interest rates.

Liquidity Risk

Liquidity risk is the potential that Schwab will be unable to meet cash flow obligations when they come due without incurring unacceptable losses.

Due to its role as a source of financial strength, CSC’s liquidity needs are primarily driven by the liquidity and capital needs of CS&Co, the capital needs of the banking subsidiaries, principal and interest due on corporate debt, dividend payments on CSC’s preferred stock, and returns of capital to common stockholders. The liquidity needs of CS&Co are primarily driven by client activity including trading and margin borrowing activities and capital expenditures. The capital needs of the banking subsidiaries are primarily driven by client deposits. We have established liquidity policies to support the successful execution of business strategies, while ensuring ongoing and sufficient liquidity to meet operational needs and satisfy applicable regulatory requirements under both normal and stressed conditions. We seek to maintain client confidence in the balance sheet and the safety of client assets by maintaining liquidity and diversity of funding sources to allow the Company to meet its obligations. To this end, we have established limits and contingency funding scenarios to support liquidity levels during both business as usual and stressed conditions.

We employ a variety of methodologies to monitor and manage liquidity. We conduct regular liquidity stress testing to develop a consolidated view of liquidity risk exposures and to ensure our ability to maintain sufficient liquidity during market-related or company-specific liquidity stress events. Liquidity is also tested at key subsidiaries and results are reported to the Financial Risk Oversight Committee. A number of early warning indicators are monitored to help identify emerging liquidity stresses in the market or within the organization and are reviewed with management as appropriate.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

The Company was subject to, and was in compliance with, the modified LCR rule at December 31, 2018. As Schwab's consolidated balance sheet assets were above \$250 billion at December 31, 2018, Schwab will become subject to the full LCR rule in the second quarter of 2019. The table below presents information about our average LCR:

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| | Average | |
| | for the | |
| | Three | |
| | Months | |
| | Ended | |
| | December | |
| | 31, 2018 | |
| Total eligible HQLA | \$38,881 | |
| Net cash outflows ⁽¹⁾ | \$35,191 | |
| LCR | 111 | % |

⁽¹⁾ This amount represents modified net cash outflows as defined by the LCR rule, which requires that HQLA cover 70% of total stressed net cash outflows.

Primary Funding Sources

Schwab's primary source of funds is cash generated by client activity which includes bank deposits and cash balances in client brokerage accounts. These funds are used to purchase investment securities and extend loans to clients.

Other sources of funds may include cash flows from operations, maturities and sales of investment securities, repayments on loans, securities lending of assets held in client brokerage accounts, repurchase agreements, and cash provided by external financing.

To meet daily funding needs, we maintain liquidity in the form of overnight cash deposits and short-term investments. For unanticipated liquidity needs, a buffer of highly liquid investments, currently comprised of U.S. Treasury notes, is also maintained.

Additional Funding Sources

In addition to internal sources of liquidity, Schwab has access to external funding. The need for short-term borrowings from these facilities arises primarily from timing differences between cash flow requirements, scheduled liquidation of interest-earning investments, movements of cash to meet regulatory brokerage client cash segregation requirements and general corporate purposes. We maintain policies and procedures necessary to access funding and test discount window borrowing procedures on a periodic basis.

The following table describes external debt facilities available at December 31, 2018:

| Description | Borrower | Outstanding | Available |
|---|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| Federal Home Loan Bank secured credit facility ⁽¹⁾ | Banking subsidiaries | \$ | —\$ 35,528 |
| Uncommitted, unsecured lines of credit with various external banks | CSC, CS&Co | — | 1,432 |
| Unsecured commercial paper ⁽²⁾ | CSC | — | 750 |
| Committed, unsecured credit facility with various external banks ⁽³⁾ | CSC | — | 750 |
| Federal Reserve Bank discount window ⁽⁴⁾ | CSB | — | 7,865 |

- (1) Amounts available are dependent on the amount of First Mortgages, HELOCs, and the fair value of certain investment securities that are pledged as collateral.
- (2) CSC has authorization from its Board of Directors to issue Commercial Paper Notes to not exceed \$1.5 billion. Management has set a current limit not to exceed the amount of the committed, unsecured credit facility.
- (3) Other than an overnight borrowing to test availability, this facility was unused during 2018.
- (4) Amounts available are dependent on the fair value of certain investment securities that are pledged as collateral.

Certain banking subsidiaries maintain secured credit facilities with the Federal Home Loan Bank of San Francisco (FHLB). Amounts available under these facilities are dependent on the value of our First Mortgages, HELOCs, and the fair value of certain of our investment securities that are pledged as collateral. During 2018, CSB used borrowings under this agreement to purchase investment securities in advance of bank sweep transfers. This credit facility is also available as backup financing in the event the outflow of client cash from the banking subsidiaries' respective balance sheets is greater than maturities and paydowns on investment securities and bank loans.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

CSB also has access to short-term secured funding through the Federal Reserve's discount window. Amounts available under the Federal Reserve discount window are dependent on the fair value of certain investment securities that are pledged as collateral.

CSC has a commercial paper program of which proceeds are used for general corporate purposes. The maturities of the Commercial Paper Notes may vary, but are not to exceed 270 days from the date of issue. CSC's ratings for these short-term borrowings are P1 by Moody's, A1 by Standard & Poor's, and F1 by Fitch. CSC had no Commercial Paper Notes outstanding at December 31, 2018 or 2017.

The financial covenants for the \$750 million committed credit facility require CS&Co to maintain a minimum net capital ratio, CSB to be well capitalized, and CSC to maintain a minimum level of stockholders' equity, adjusted to exclude AOCI. At December 31, 2018, the minimum level of stockholders' equity required under this facility was \$14.5 billion (CSC's stockholders' equity, excluding AOCI, at December 31, 2018 was \$20.9 billion). Management believes these restrictions will not have a material effect on CSC's ability to meet foreseeable dividend or funding requirements.

To partially satisfy the margin requirement of client option transactions with the Options Clearing Corporation, CS&Co has unsecured standby letter of credit agreements (LOCs) with several banks in favor of the Options Clearing Corporation aggregating \$225 million at December 31, 2018. There were no funds drawn under any of these LOCs during 2018 or 2017. In connection with its securities lending activities, the Company is required to provide collateral to certain brokerage clients. The collateral requirements were satisfied by providing cash as collateral.

CSC has a universal automatic shelf registration statement (Shelf Registration Statement) on file with the SEC, which enables it to issue debt, equity, and other securities.

Borrowings

Long-term debt outstanding was \$6.9 billion and \$4.8 billion at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. No short-term borrowings were outstanding as of December 31, 2018. Short-term borrowings outstanding from the FHLB were \$15.0 billion at December 31, 2017.

The following are details of the Senior Notes:

| December 31, 2018 | Par Outstanding | Maturity | Weighted Average Interest Rate | Moody's | Standard & Poor's | Fitch |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------|---------|-------------------|-------|
| Senior Notes | \$ 6,881 | 2020 - 2029 | 3.42% | A2 | A | A |

New Debt Issuances

All debt issuances in 2018 and 2017 were senior unsecured obligations with interest payable quarterly or semi-annually. Additional details are as follows:

| Issuance Date | Issuance Amount | Maturity Date | Interest Rate | Interest Payable |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| March 2, 2017 | \$ 650 | 3/2/2027 | 3.200% | Semi-annually |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | |
|------------------|--------|-----------|------------------------------|---------------|
| December 7, 2017 | \$ 700 | 1/25/2028 | 3.200% | Semi-annually |
| December 7, 2017 | \$ 800 | 1/25/2023 | 2.650% | Semi-annually |
| May 22, 2018 | \$ 600 | 5/21/2021 | Three-month LIBOR + 0.32% | Quarterly |
| May 22, 2018 | \$ 600 | 5/21/2021 | 3.250% | Semi-annually |
| May 22, 2018 | \$ 750 | 5/21/2025 | 3.850% | Semi-annually |
| October 31, 2018 | \$ 500 | 2/1/2024 | 3.550% | Semi-annually |
| October 31, 2018 | \$ 600 | 2/1/2029 | 4.000% | Semi-annually |

- 41 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Equity Issuances and Redemptions

CSC did not issue any equity through external offerings during the year ended December 31, 2018. CSC's preferred stock issued and net proceeds for the year ended December 31, 2017 are as follows:

| Date Issued and Sold | Net Proceeds |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Series F October 31, 2017 | \$ 492 |

On December 1, 2017, CSC redeemed all of the 485,000 outstanding shares of its 6.00% Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series B ("Series B Preferred Stock"), and the corresponding 19,400,000 depository shares, each representing a 1/40th interest in a share of the Series B Preferred Stock.

For further discussion of CSC's long-term debt and information on the equity offerings, see Item 8 – Note 13 and Note 17.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

Schwab enters into various off-balance sheet arrangements in the ordinary course of business, primarily to meet the needs of our clients. These arrangements include firm commitments to extend credit. Additionally, Schwab enters into guarantees and other similar arrangements in the ordinary course of business. For information on each of these arrangements, see Item 8 – Note 7, Note 11, Note 13, Note 14, and Note 15.

Contractual Obligations

Schwab's principal contractual obligations as of December 31, 2018 are shown in the following table. Excluded from this table are liabilities recorded on the consolidated balance sheets that are generally short-term in nature (e.g., payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations and short-term borrowings) or without contractual payment terms (e.g., bank deposits, payables to brokerage clients, and deferred compensation).

| December 31, 2018 | Less than | 1-3 | 3-5 | More than | Total |
|---|-----------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| | 1 Year | Years | Years | 5 Years | |
| Credit-related financial instruments ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 1,592 | \$3,162 | \$5,093 | \$ 1,698 | \$ 11,545 |
| Long-term debt ⁽²⁾ | 237 | 2,325 | 1,370 | 4,330 | 8,262 |
| Purchase obligations ⁽³⁾ | 475 | 303 | 54 | 170 | 1,002 |
| Leases ⁽⁴⁾ | 128 | 219 | 150 | 282 | 779 |
| Total | \$ 2,432 | \$6,009 | \$6,667 | \$ 6,480 | \$21,588 |

⁽¹⁾ Represents CSB's commitments to extend credit to banking clients, purchase mortgage loans, and commitments to fund CRA investments.

⁽²⁾ Includes estimated future interest payments through 2029 for Senior Notes. Amounts exclude maturities under a finance lease obligation and unamortized discounts and premiums.

⁽³⁾ Consists of purchase obligations for services such as advertising and marketing, telecommunications, professional services, and hardware- and software-related agreements.

⁽⁴⁾ Represents minimum rental commitments, net of sublease commitments, and includes facilities under past restructuring initiatives and rental commitments under a finance lease obligation.

CAPITAL MANAGEMENT

Schwab seeks to manage capital to a level and composition sufficient to support execution of our business strategy, including anticipated balance sheet growth, providing financial support to the subsidiaries, and sustained access to the capital markets, while at the same time meeting our regulatory capital requirements and serving as a source of financial strength to our banking subsidiaries. Schwab's primary sources of capital are funds generated by the operations of subsidiaries and securities issuances by CSC in the capital markets. To ensure that Schwab has sufficient capital to absorb unanticipated losses or declines in asset values, we have adopted a policy to remain well capitalized even in stressed scenarios.

- 42 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations
(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

Internal guidelines are set, for both CSC and its regulated subsidiaries, to ensure capital levels are in line with our strategy and regulatory requirements. Capital forecasts are reviewed monthly at Asset-Liability Management and Pricing Committee and Financial Risk Oversight Committee meetings. A number of early warning indicators are monitored to help identify potential problems that could impact capital. In addition, we monitor the subsidiaries' capital levels and requirements. Subject to regulatory capital requirements and any required approvals, any excess capital held by subsidiaries is transferred to CSC in the form of dividends and returns of capital. When subsidiaries have need of additional capital, funds are provided by CSC as equity investments and also as subordinated loans (in a form approved as regulatory capital by regulators) for CS&Co. The details and method used for each cash infusion are based on an analysis of the particular entity's needs and financing alternatives. The amounts and structure of infusions must take into consideration maintenance of regulatory capital requirements, debt/equity ratios, and equity double leverage ratios.

Schwab conducts regular capital stress testing to assess the potential financial impacts of various adverse macroeconomic and company-specific events to which the Company could be subjected. The objective of the capital stress testing is (1) to explore various potential outcomes – including rare and extreme events and (2) to assess impacts of potential stressful outcomes on both capital and liquidity. Additionally, we have a comprehensive Capital Contingency Plan to provide action plans for certain low probability/high impact capital events that the Company might face. The Capital Contingency Plan is issued under the authority of the Financial Risk Oversight Committee and provides guidelines for sustained capital events. It does not specifically address every contingency, but is designed to provide a framework for responding to any capital stress. The results of the stress testing indicate there are two scenarios which could stress the Company's capital: (1) inflows of balance sheet cash during a period of very low interest rates and (2) outflows of balance sheet cash when other sources of financing are not available and the Company is required to sell assets to fund the flows at a loss. The Capital Contingency Plan is reviewed annually and updated as appropriate.

For additional information, see Business – Regulation in Part I, Item 1.

Regulatory Capital Requirements

CSC is subject to capital requirements set by the Federal Reserve and is required to serve as a source of strength for our banking subsidiaries and to provide financial assistance if our banking subsidiaries experience financial distress. Schwab is required to maintain a Tier 1 Leverage Ratio for CSC of at least 4%; however, management seeks to maintain the ratio of at least 6%. Due to the relatively low risk of our balance sheet assets and risk-based capital ratios at CSC and CSB that are well in excess of regulatory requirements, the Tier 1 Leverage Ratio is the most restrictive capital constraint on CSC's asset growth.

Our banking subsidiaries are subject to capital requirements set by their regulators that are substantially similar to those imposed on CSC by the Federal Reserve. Our banking subsidiaries' failure to remain well capitalized could result in certain mandatory and possibly additional discretionary actions by the regulators that could have a direct material effect on the banks. Schwab's principal banking subsidiary, CSB, is required to maintain a Tier 1 Leverage Ratio of at least 5% to be well capitalized, but seeks to maintain the ratio of at least 6.25%. Based on its regulatory capital ratios at December 31, 2018, CSB is considered well capitalized.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

The following table details CSC's consolidated and CSB's capital ratios:

| December 31, | 2018 | | 2017 | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| | CSC | CSB | CSC | CSB |
| Total stockholders' equity | \$20,670 | \$15,615 | \$18,525 | \$13,224 |
| Less: | | | | |
| Preferred Stock | 2,793 | — | 2,793 | — |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Capital before regulatory adjustments | \$17,877 | \$15,615 | \$15,732 | \$13,224 |
| Less: | | | | |
| Goodwill, net of associated deferred tax liabilities | \$1,188 | \$13 | \$1,191 | \$13 |
| Other intangible assets, net of associated deferred tax liabilities | 125 | — | 61 | — |
| Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowances and deferred tax liabilities | 3 | 1 | 2 | — |
| AOCI adjustment ⁽¹⁾ | (252) | (231) | (152) | (144) |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Capital | \$16,813 | \$15,832 | \$14,630 | \$13,355 |
| Tier 1 Capital | \$19,606 | \$15,832 | \$17,423 | \$13,355 |
| Total Capital | 19,628 | 15,853 | 17,452 | 13,382 |
| Risk-Weighted Assets | 95,441 | 80,513 | 75,866 | 66,519 |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Capital/Risk-Weighted Assets | 17.6 | % 19.7 | % 19.3 | % 20.1 |
| Tier 1 Capital/Risk-Weighted Assets | 20.5 | % 19.7 | % 23.0 | % 20.1 |
| Total Capital/Risk-Weighted Assets | 20.6 | % 19.7 | % 23.0 | % 20.1 |
| Tier 1 Leverage Ratio | 7.1 | % 7.2 | % 7.6 | % 7.1 |

⁽¹⁾ CSC and CSB elected to opt-out of the requirement to include most components of AOCI in CET1 Capital.

Beginning in 2019, CSC is required to include all components of AOCI in regulatory capital.

CSB is also subject to regulatory requirements that restrict and govern the terms of affiliate transactions. In addition, CSB is required to provide notice to, and may be required to obtain approval from, the OCC and the Federal Reserve to declare dividends to CSC.

As a broker-dealer, CS&Co is subject to regulatory requirements of the Uniform Net Capital Rule, which is intended to ensure the general financial soundness and liquidity of broker-dealers. These regulations prohibit CS&Co from paying cash dividends, making unsecured advances and loans to the parent company and employees, and repaying subordinated borrowings from CSC if such payment would result in a net capital amount below prescribed thresholds. At December 31, 2018, CS&Co was in compliance with its net capital requirements.

In addition to the capital requirements above, Schwab's subsidiaries are subject to other regulatory requirements intended to ensure financial soundness and liquidity. See Item 8 – Note 21 for additional information on the components of stockholders' equity and information on the capital requirements of significant subsidiaries.

Dividends

Since the initial dividend in 1989, CSC has paid 119 consecutive quarterly dividends and has increased the quarterly dividend rate 23 times, resulting in a 21% compounded annual growth rate, excluding the special cash dividend of \$1.00 per common share in 2007. While the payment and amount of dividends are at the discretion of the Board of Directors, subject to certain regulatory and other restrictions, CSC currently targets its common stock cash dividend at approximately 20% to 30% of net income.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

The Board of Directors of the Company declared quarterly cash dividend increases per common share during 2017 and 2018 as shown below:

| Date of Declaration | Quarterly Cash Increase Per Common Share | % Increase | New Quarterly Dividend Per Common Share |
|---------------------|---|---------------|--|
| January 26, 2017 | \$ 0.01 | 14 % | \$ 0.08 |
| January 25, 2018 | 0.02 | 25 % | 0.10 |
| July 25, 2018 | 0.03 | 30 % | 0.13 |

In addition, on January 30, 2019, the Board of Directors of the Company declared a four cent, or 31%, increase in the quarterly cash dividend to \$0.17 per common share.

The following table details the CSC cash dividends paid and per share amounts:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | | 2017 | |
|---|--------------|------------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| | Cash Paid | Per Share Amount | Cash Paid | Per Share Amount |
| Common Stock | \$623 | \$ 0.46 | \$431 | \$ 0.32 |
| Series A Preferred Stock ⁽¹⁾ | 28 | 70.00 | 28 | 70.00 |
| Series B Preferred Stock ^(2,5) | N/A | N/A | 29 | 60.00 |
| Series C Preferred Stock ⁽²⁾ | 36 | 60.00 | 36 | 60.00 |
| Series D Preferred Stock ⁽²⁾ | 45 | 59.52 | 45 | 59.52 |
| Series E Preferred Stock ⁽³⁾ | 28 | 4,625.00 | 23 | 3,867.01 |
| Series F Preferred Stock ⁽⁴⁾ | 27 | 5,430.56 | N/A | N/A |

⁽¹⁾ Dividends paid semi-annually until February 1, 2022 and quarterly thereafter.

⁽²⁾ Dividends paid quarterly.

⁽³⁾ Dividends paid semi-annually until March 1, 2022 and quarterly thereafter.

⁽⁴⁾ Series F Preferred Stock was issued on October 31, 2017. Dividends paid semi-annually beginning on June 1, 2018 until December 1, 2027, and quarterly thereafter.

⁽⁵⁾ Series B Preferred Stock was redeemed on December 1, 2017.

N/A Not applicable.

Share Repurchases

On October 25, 2018, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors terminated the existing two share repurchase authorizations and replaced them with a new authorization to repurchase up to \$1.0 billion of common stock. CSC repurchased 22 million shares of its common stock for \$1.0 billion in 2018, completing all repurchases under this authorization. There were no repurchases of CSC's common stock in 2018 prior to the fourth quarter, or in 2017.

On January 30, 2019, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of up to \$4.0 billion of common stock. The authorization does not have an expiration date.

FOREIGN HOLDINGS

At December 31, 2018, Schwab had exposure to non-sovereign financial and non-financial institutions in foreign countries, as well as agencies of foreign governments. At December 31, 2018, the fair value of these holdings totaled \$7.6 billion, with the top three exposures being to issuers and counterparties domiciled in France at \$2.8 billion, Sweden at \$1.3 billion, and Canada at \$0.8 billion.

In addition to the direct holdings in foreign companies and securities issued by foreign government agencies, Schwab has indirect exposure to foreign countries through its investments in CSIM money market funds (collectively, the Funds) resulting from brokerage clearing activities. At December 31, 2018, the Company had \$21 million in investments in these Funds. Certain of the Funds' positions include certificates of deposits, time deposits, commercial paper and corporate debt securities issued by counterparties in foreign countries. Schwab had outstanding margin loans to foreign residents of \$746 million at December 31, 2018.

- 45 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

FAIR VALUE OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

Schwab uses the market approach to determine the fair value of certain financial assets and liabilities recorded at fair value, and to determine fair value disclosures. See Item 8 – Note 2 and Note 16 for more information on our assets and liabilities recorded at fair value.

When available, Schwab uses quoted prices in active markets to measure the fair value of assets and liabilities. When utilizing market data and bid-ask spread, we use the price within the bid-ask spread that best represents fair value. When quoted prices do not exist, prices are obtained from independent third-party pricing services to measure the fair value of investment assets. We generally obtain prices from three independent pricing sources for assets recorded at fair value. Our primary third-party pricing service provides prices based on observable trades and discounted cash flows that incorporate observable information such as yields for similar types of securities (a benchmark interest rate plus observable spreads) and weighted-average maturity for the same or similar “to-be-issued” securities. We compare the prices obtained from the primary independent pricing service to the prices obtained from the additional independent pricing services to determine if the price obtained from the primary independent pricing service is reasonable. Schwab does not adjust the prices received from independent third-party pricing services unless such prices are inconsistent with the definition of fair value and result in material differences in the amounts recorded. At December 31, 2018 and 2017, we did not adjust prices received from the primary independent third-party pricing service.

CRITICAL ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES

The consolidated financial statements of Schwab have been prepared in accordance with GAAP. Item 8 – Note 2 contains more information on our significant accounting policies made in connection with its application of these accounting principles.

While the majority of the revenues, expenses, assets and liabilities are not based on estimates, there are certain accounting principles that require management to make estimates regarding matters that are uncertain and susceptible to change where such change may result in a material adverse impact on Schwab's financial position and reported financial results. These critical accounting estimates are described below. Management regularly reviews the estimates and assumptions used in the preparation of the financial statements for reasonableness and adequacy.

Management has discussed the development and selection of these critical accounting estimates with the Audit Committee of the Board of Directors. Additionally, management has reviewed with the Audit Committee the Company's significant estimates discussed in this Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.

Income Taxes

Schwab estimates income tax expense based on amounts expected to be owed to the various tax jurisdictions in which we operate, including federal, state and local domestic jurisdictions, and immaterial amounts owed to several foreign jurisdictions. The estimated income tax expense is reported in the consolidated statements of income in taxes on income. Accrued taxes are reported in other assets or accrued expenses and other liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets and represent the net estimated amount due to or to be received from taxing jurisdictions either

currently or deferred to future periods. Deferred taxes arise from differences between assets and liabilities measured for financial reporting purposes versus income tax reporting purposes. Deferred tax assets are recognized if, in management's judgment, their realizability is determined to be more likely than not. Uncertain tax positions that meet the more likely than not recognition threshold are measured to determine the amount of benefit to recognize. An uncertain tax position is measured at the largest amount of benefit management believes is more likely than not to be realized upon settlement. In estimating accrued taxes, we assess the relative merits and risks of the appropriate tax treatment considering statutory, judicial and regulatory guidance in the context of the tax position. Because of the complexity of tax laws and regulations, interpretation can be difficult and subject to legal judgment given specific facts and circumstances.

Changes in the estimate of accrued taxes occur periodically due to changes in tax rates, interpretations of tax laws, the status of examinations being conducted by various taxing authorities, and newly enacted statutory, judicial and regulatory guidance that impacts the relative merits and risks of tax positions. These changes, when they occur, affect accrued taxes and can be

- 46 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Ratios, or as Noted)

significant to the operating results of the Company. See Item 8 – Note 20 for more information on the Company's income taxes.

Legal and Regulatory Reserves

Reserves for legal and regulatory claims and proceedings reflect an estimate of probable losses for each matter, after considering, among other factors, the progress of the case, prior experience and the experience of others in similar cases, available defenses, and the opinions and views of legal counsel. In many cases, including most class action lawsuits, it is not possible to determine whether a loss will be incurred, or to estimate the range of that loss, until the matter is close to resolution, in which case no accrual is made until that time. Reserves are adjusted as more information becomes available. Significant judgment is required in making these estimates, and the actual cost of resolving a matter may ultimately differ materially from the amount reserved. See Item 8 – Note 14 for more information on the Company's contingencies related to legal and regulatory reserves.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk

For a discussion of the quantitative and qualitative disclosures about market risk, see Risk Management in Part II, Item 7.

- 48 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|---|------------|
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Income</u> | <u>50</u> |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income</u> | <u>51</u> |
| <u>Consolidated Balance Sheets</u> | <u>52</u> |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows</u> | <u>53</u> |
| <u>Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity</u> | <u>55</u> |
| <u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u> | <u>56</u> |
| Note 1. <u>Introduction and Basis of Presentation</u> | <u>56</u> |
| Note 2. <u>Summary of Significant Accounting Policies</u> | <u>57</u> |
| Note 3. <u>Revenue Recognition</u> | <u>67</u> |
| Note 4. <u>Receivables from and Payables to Brokerage Clients</u> | <u>69</u> |
| Note 5. <u>Other Securities Owned</u> | <u>69</u> |
| Note 6. <u>Investment Securities</u> | <u>70</u> |
| Note 7. <u>Bank Loans and Related Allowance for Loan Losses</u> | <u>74</u> |
| Note 8. <u>Equipment, Office Facilities, and Property</u> | <u>78</u> |
| Note 9. <u>Goodwill</u> | <u>79</u> |
| Note 10. <u>Other Assets</u> | <u>79</u> |
| Note 11. <u>Variable Interest Entities</u> | <u>79</u> |
| Note 12. <u>Bank Deposits</u> | <u>80</u> |
| Note 13. <u>Borrowings</u> | <u>81</u> |
| Note 14. <u>Commitments and Contingencies</u> | <u>82</u> |
| Note 15. <u>Financial Instruments Subject to Off-Balance Sheet Credit Risk</u> | <u>84</u> |
| Note 16. <u>Fair Values of Assets and Liabilities</u> | <u>87</u> |
| Note 17. <u>Stockholders' Equity</u> | <u>91</u> |
| Note 18. <u>Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income</u> | <u>92</u> |
| Note 19. <u>Employee Incentive, Retirement, Deferred Compensation, and Career Achievement Plans</u> | <u>93</u> |
| Note 20. <u>Taxes on Income</u> | <u>95</u> |
| Note 21. <u>Regulatory Requirements</u> | <u>97</u> |
| Note 22. <u>Segment Information</u> | <u>99</u> |
| Note 23. <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation – Parent Company Only Financial Statements</u> | <u>100</u> |
| Note 24. <u>Quarterly Financial Information (Unaudited)</u> | <u>102</u> |
| Note 25. <u>Subsequent Event</u> | <u>102</u> |
| <u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u> | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting</u> | <u>104</u> |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Consolidated Statements of Income
(In Millions, Except Per Share Amounts)

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|---|---------|---------|---------|
| Net Revenues | | | |
| Interest revenue | \$6,680 | \$4,624 | \$3,493 |
| Interest expense | (857) | (342) | (171) |
| Net interest revenue | 5,823 | 4,282 | 3,322 |
| Asset management and administration fees ⁽¹⁾ | 3,229 | 3,392 | 3,055 |
| Trading revenue | 763 | 654 | 825 |
| Other | 317 | 290 | 276 |
| Total net revenues | 10,132 | 8,618 | 7,478 |
| Expenses Excluding Interest | | | |
| Compensation and benefits | 3,057 | 2,737 | 2,466 |
| Professional services | 654 | 580 | 506 |
| Occupancy and equipment | 496 | 436 | 398 |
| Advertising and market development | 313 | 268 | 265 |
| Communications | 242 | 231 | 237 |
| Depreciation and amortization | 306 | 269 | 234 |
| Regulatory fees and assessments | 189 | 179 | 144 |
| Other | 313 | 268 | 235 |
| Total expenses excluding interest | 5,570 | 4,968 | 4,485 |
| Income before taxes on income | 4,562 | 3,650 | 2,993 |
| Taxes on income | 1,055 | 1,296 | 1,104 |
| Net Income | 3,507 | 2,354 | 1,889 |
| Preferred stock dividends and other ⁽²⁾ | 178 | 174 | 143 |
| Net Income Available to Common Stockholders | \$3,329 | \$2,180 | \$1,746 |
| Weighted-Average Common Shares Outstanding: | | | |
| Basic | 1,348 | 1,339 | 1,324 |
| Diluted ⁽³⁾ | 1,361 | 1,353 | 1,334 |
| Earnings Per Common Shares Outstanding: | | | |
| Basic | \$2.47 | \$1.63 | \$1.32 |
| Diluted ⁽³⁾ | \$2.45 | \$1.61 | \$1.31 |

⁽¹⁾ Includes fee waivers of \$0, \$10 million, and \$224 million during the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively, relating to Schwab-sponsored money market funds.

⁽²⁾ Includes preferred stock dividends and undistributed earnings and dividends allocated to non-vested restricted stock units.

⁽³⁾ Antidilutive stock options and restricted stock units excluded from the calculation of diluted EPS totaled 18 million, 15 million, and 26 million shares in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income
(In Millions)

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|---|---------|---------|---------|
| Net income | \$3,507 | \$2,354 | \$1,889 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), before tax: | | | |
| Change in net unrealized gain (loss) on available for sale securities: | | | |
| Net unrealized gain (loss) | (123) | 13 | (44) |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss transferred to held to maturity | — | 227 | — |
| Other reclassifications included in other revenue | — | (12) | (4) |
| Change in net unrealized gain (loss) on held to maturity securities: | | | |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss transferred from available for sale | — | (227) | — |
| Amortization of amounts previously recorded upon transfer from available for sale | 35 | 31 | — |
| Other | (1) | (11) | 1 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), before tax | (89) | 21 | (47) |
| Income tax effect | 22 | (10) | 18 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | (67) | 11 | (29) |
| Comprehensive Income | \$3,440 | \$2,365 | \$1,860 |

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Consolidated Balance Sheets

(In Millions, Except Per Share and Share Amounts)

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|---|-----------|-----------|
| Assets | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$27,938 | \$14,217 |
| Cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes (including resale agreements of \$7,195 and \$6,596 at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively) | 13,563 | 15,139 |
| Receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 553 | 649 |
| Receivables from brokerage clients — net | 21,651 | 20,576 |
| Other securities owned — at fair value | 539 | 539 |
| Available for sale securities | 66,578 | 49,995 |
| Held to maturity securities | 144,009 | 120,926 |
| Bank loans — net | 16,609 | 16,478 |
| Equipment, office facilities, and property — net | 1,769 | 1,471 |
| Goodwill | 1,227 | 1,227 |
| Other assets | 2,046 | 2,057 |
| Total assets | \$296,482 | \$243,274 |
| Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity | | |
| Bank deposits | \$231,423 | \$169,656 |
| Payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 1,831 | 1,287 |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 32,726 | 31,243 |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | 2,954 | 2,810 |
| Short-term borrowings | — | 15,000 |
| Long-term debt | 6,878 | 4,753 |
| Total liabilities | 275,812 | 224,749 |
| Stockholders' equity: | | |
| Preferred stock — \$.01 par value per share; aggregate liquidation preference of \$2,850 | 2,793 | 2,793 |
| Common stock — 3 billion shares authorized; \$.01 par value per share; 1,487,543,446 shares issued | 15 | 15 |
| Additional paid-in capital | 4,499 | 4,353 |
| Retained earnings | 17,329 | 14,408 |
| Treasury stock, at cost — 155,116,695 and 142,210,890 shares at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively | (3,714) | (2,892) |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | (252) | (152) |
| Total stockholders' equity | 20,670 | 18,525 |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$296,482 | \$243,274 |

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(In Millions)

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 ⁽¹⁾ | 2016 ⁽¹⁾ |
|--|-----------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Cash Flows from Operating Activities | | | |
| Net income | \$3,507 | \$2,354 | \$1,889 |
| Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by (used for) operating activities: | | | |
| Share-based compensation | 197 | 153 | 141 |
| Depreciation and amortization | 306 | 269 | 234 |
| Provision (benefit) for deferred income taxes | 49 | 58 | 15 |
| Premium amortization, net, on available for sale and held to maturity securities | 350 | 342 | 266 |
| Other | 137 | 51 | 4 |
| Net change in: | | | |
| Investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | 6,922 | 4,933 | (1,635) |
| Receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 96 | 74 | (147) |
| Receivables from brokerage clients | (1,100) | (3,428) | 150 |
| Other securities owned | — | (90) | 84 |
| Other assets | (104) | (177) | (93) |
| Payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 573 | (1,148) | (181) |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 1,483 | (4,651) | 2,709 |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | 40 | 421 | 167 |
| Net cash provided by (used for) operating activities | 12,456 | (839) | 3,603 |
| Cash Flows from Investing Activities | | | |
| Purchases of available for sale securities | (32,801) | (15,033) | (29,248) |
| Proceeds from sales of available for sale securities | 115 | 8,617 | 5,537 |
| Principal payments on available for sale securities | 16,016 | 9,095 | 11,903 |
| Purchases of held to maturity securities | (40,873) | (32,925) | (31,162) |
| Principal payments on held to maturity securities | 17,410 | 11,627 | 5,747 |
| Net increase in bank loans | (129) | (1,071) | (1,103) |
| Purchases of equipment, office facilities, and property | (570) | (400) | (346) |
| Purchases of Federal Home Loan Bank stock | (156) | (430) | (152) |
| Proceeds from sales of Federal Home Loan Bank stock | 529 | 106 | 88 |
| Other investing activities | (96) | (59) | (39) |
| Net cash provided by (used for) investing activities | (40,555) | (20,473) | (38,775) |
| Cash Flows from Financing Activities | | | |
| Net change in bank deposits ⁽²⁾ | 61,767 | 6,186 | 33,952 |
| Net change in short-term borrowings | (15,000) | 15,000 | — |
| Issuance of long-term debt | 3,024 | 2,129 | — |
| Repayment of long-term debt | (909) | (257) | (7) |
| Repurchases of common stock | (1,000) | — | — |
| Net proceeds from preferred stock offerings | — | 492 | 1,316 |
| Redemption of preferred stock | — | (485) | — |
| Dividends paid | (787) | (592) | (486) |
| Proceeds from stock options exercised | 125 | 171 | 144 |
| Other financing activities | (54) | (45) | 44 |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities | 47,166 | 22,599 | 34,963 |
| Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents, including Amounts Restricted | 19,067 | 1,287 | (209) |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents including Amounts Restricted at Beginning of Year | 19,160 | 17,873 | 18,082 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents, including Amounts Restricted at End of Year | \$38,227 | \$19,160 | \$17,873 |

Continued on following page

- 53 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Continued from previous page

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|---|----------|----------|----------|
| | (1) | (1) | (1) |
| Supplemental Cash Flow Information | | | |
| Cash paid during the year for: | | | |
| Interest | \$798 | \$327 | \$160 |
| Income taxes | \$927 | \$1,212 | \$991 |
| Non-cash investing activity: | | | |
| Securities purchased during the period but settled after period end | \$— | \$29 | \$— |
| December 31, | | | |
| Reconciliation of cash, cash equivalents and amounts reported within the balance sheet ⁽³⁾ | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$27,938 | \$14,217 | \$10,828 |
| Restricted cash and cash equivalents amounts included in cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | 10,289 | 4,943 | 7,045 |
| Total cash and cash equivalents, including amounts restricted shown in the statement of cash flows | \$38,227 | \$19,160 | \$17,873 |

(1) Adjusted for the retrospective adoption of ASU 2016-18. See Note 2.

(2) Includes transfers from other sweep features to bank sweep of \$72 billion, \$5 billion and \$8 billion for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

(3) For more information on the nature of restrictions on restricted cash and cash equivalents see Note 21.

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity
(In Millions)

| | Preferred Stock | Common Stock Shares | Common Stock Amount | Additional Paid-In Capital | Retained Earnings | Treasury Stock, at cost | Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) | Total |
|--|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---|-----------|
| Balance at December 31, 2015 | \$ 1,459 | 1,488 | \$ 15 | \$ 4,152 | \$ 11,253 | \$(3,343) | \$ (134) | \$ 13,402 |
| Net income | — | — | — | — | 1,889 | — | — | 1,889 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | — | — | — | — | — | — | (29) | (29) |
| Issuance of preferred stock, net | 1,324 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 1,324 |
| Dividends declared on preferred stock | — | — | — | — | (126) | — | — | (126) |
| Dividends declared on common stock — \$.27 per share | — | — | — | — | (360) | — | — | (360) |
| Stock option exercises and other Share-based compensation and related tax effects | — | — | — | (80) | — | 224 | — | 144 |
| Other | — | — | — | 177 | — | — | — | 177 |
| Other | — | — | — | 18 | (7) | (11) | — | — |
| Balance at December 31, 2016 | 2,783 | 1,488 | 15 | 4,267 | 12,649 | (3,130) | (163) | 16,421 |
| Net income | — | — | — | — | 2,354 | — | — | 2,354 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | — | — | — | — | — | — | 11 | 11 |
| Issuance of preferred stock, net | 492 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 492 |
| Redemption of preferred stock | (482) | — | — | — | (3) | — | — | (485) |
| Dividends declared on preferred stock | — | — | — | — | (161) | — | — | (161) |
| Dividends declared on common stock — \$.32 per share | — | — | — | — | (431) | — | — | (431) |
| Stock option exercises and other Share-based compensation | — | — | — | (88) | — | 259 | — | 171 |
| Other | — | — | — | 144 | — | — | — | 144 |
| Other | — | — | — | 30 | — | (21) | — | 9 |
| Balance at December 31, 2017 | 2,793 | 1,488 | 15 | 4,353 | 14,408 | (2,892) | (152) | 18,525 |
| Adoption of accounting standards (Note 2) | — | — | — | — | 200 | — | (33) | 167 |
| Net income | — | — | — | — | 3,507 | — | — | 3,507 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | — | — | — | — | — | — | (67) | (67) |
| Dividends declared on preferred stock | — | — | — | — | (164) | — | — | (164) |
| Dividends declared on common stock — \$.46 per share | — | — | — | — | (624) | — | — | (624) |
| Repurchase of common stock | — | — | — | — | — | (1,000) | — | (1,000) |
| Stock option exercises and other | — | — | — | (84) | — | 209 | — | 125 |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------|-------|-------|----------|----------|-----------|---------|------------|
| Share-based compensation | — | — | — | 188 | — | — | — | 188 |
| Other | — | — | — | 42 | 2 | (31 |) | 13 |
| Balance at December 31, 2018 | \$2,793 | 1,488 | \$ 15 | \$ 4,499 | \$17,329 | \$(3,714) | \$ (252 |) \$20,670 |

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

- 55 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

1. Introduction and Basis of Presentation

The Charles Schwab Corporation (CSC) is a savings and loan holding company, headquartered in San Francisco, California. CSC was incorporated in 1986 and engages, through its subsidiaries, in wealth management, securities brokerage, banking, asset management, custody, and financial advisory services.

Significant business subsidiaries of CSC include the following:

Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. (CS&Co) is a securities broker-dealer with over 355 domestic branch offices in 47 states, as well as a branch in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico. In addition, Schwab serves clients through branch offices in the U.K., Hong Kong, Singapore, and Australia through various subsidiaries;

Charles Schwab Bank (CSB), a federal savings bank; and

Charles Schwab Investment Management, Inc. (CSIM), the investment advisor for Schwab's proprietary mutual funds (Schwab Funds®), and for Schwab's exchange-traded funds (Schwab ETFs™).

Unless otherwise indicated, the terms "Schwab," "the Company," "we," "us," or "our" mean CSC together with its consolidated subsidiaries.

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include CSC and its subsidiaries. Intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated. These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in conformity with GAAP, which require management to make certain estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts in the accompanying financial statements and in the related disclosures. These estimates are based on information available as of the date of the consolidated financial statements. While management makes its best judgment, actual amounts or results could differ from those estimates. Certain estimates relate to taxes on income and legal and regulatory reserves. Actual results may differ from those estimates.

Principles of Consolidation

Schwab evaluates all entities in which it has financial interests for consolidation, except for money market funds, which are specifically excluded from consolidation guidance. When an entity is evaluated for consolidation, Schwab determines whether its interest in the entity constitutes a controlling financial interest under either the variable interest entity (VIE) model or the voting interest entity (VOE) model. In evaluating whether Schwab's interest in a VIE is a controlling financial interest, we consider whether our involvement in the context of the design, purpose, and risks of the VIE, as well as any involvement of related parties, provides us with (i) the power to direct the most significant activities of the VIE, and (ii) the obligation to absorb losses or receive benefits that are significant to the VIE. If both of these conditions exist, then Schwab would be the primary beneficiary of that VIE, and consolidate it. Based upon the assessments for all of our interests in VIEs, there are no cases where the Company is the primary beneficiary; therefore, we are not required to consolidate any VIEs. See Note 11 for further information about VIEs. Schwab consolidates all VOEs in which it has majority-voting interests.

Investments in entities in which Schwab does not have a controlling financial interest are accounted for under the equity method of accounting when we have the ability to exercise significant influence over operating and financing decisions of the entity. Investments in entities for which Schwab does not have the ability to exercise significant influence are generally carried at cost and adjusted for impairment and observable price changes of the identical or

similar investments of the same issuer (adjusted cost method), except for certain investments in qualified affordable housing projects which are accounted for under the proportional amortization method. All equity method, adjusted cost method, and proportional amortization method investments are included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Revenue recognition

Schwab's accounting policies for revenue recognition are discussed in Note 3.

Cash and cash equivalents

Schwab considers all highly liquid investments that mature in three months or less from the time of acquisition and that are not segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes to be cash and cash equivalents. Cash and cash equivalents include money market funds, deposits with banks, certificates of deposit, commercial paper, and U.S. Treasury securities. Cash and cash equivalents also include balances that our banking subsidiaries maintain at the Federal Reserve.

Cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes

Cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes include securities purchased under agreements to resell (resale agreements), which are collateralized by U.S. Government and agency securities. Resale agreements are accounted for as collateralized financing transactions that are recorded at their contractual amounts plus accrued interest. The Company obtains collateral with a market value equal to or in excess of the principal amount loaned and accrued interest under resale agreements. Collateral is valued daily by the Company, with additional collateral obtained to ensure full collateralization. Cash and investments segregated also include certificates of deposit and U.S. Government securities. Certificates of deposit and U.S. Government securities are recorded at fair value. Pursuant to the SEC's Customer Protection Rule, cash balances not collateralizing margin positions and not swept to money market funds or bank deposit accounts, are segregated by Schwab for the exclusive benefit of clients.

Receivables from brokerage clients

Receivables from brokerage clients include margin loans to securities brokerage clients and other trading receivables from clients. Margin loans are collateralized by client securities and are carried at the amount receivable, net of an allowance for doubtful accounts. The Company monitors margin levels and requires clients to deposit additional collateral, or reduce margin positions, to meet minimum collateral requirements if the fair value of the collateral changes. Receivables from brokerage clients that remain unsecured or partially secured for more than 30 days are fully reserved for in the allowance for doubtful accounts, except in the case of confirmed fraud, which is reserved immediately. Clients with margin loans have agreed to allow Schwab to pledge collateralized securities in accordance with federal regulations. The collateral is not reflected in the consolidated financial statements. The allowance for doubtful accounts for brokerage clients and related activity was immaterial for all periods presented.

Other securities owned

Other securities owned are recorded at fair value based on quoted market prices or other observable market data. Unrealized gains and losses are included in earnings.

Investment securities

AFS securities are recorded at fair value and unrealized gains and losses are reported, net of taxes, in AOCI included in stockholders' equity. HTM securities are recorded at amortized cost based on the Company's positive intent and ability to hold these securities to maturity. Realized gains and losses from sales of AFS securities are determined on a specific identification basis and are included in other revenue.

Management evaluates whether investment securities are OTTI on a quarterly basis. Debt securities with unrealized losses are considered OTTI if the Company intends to sell the security or if it is more likely than not that the Company will be required to sell such security before any anticipated recovery. If management determines that a security is OTTI under these circumstances, the impairment recognized in earnings is measured as the entire difference between amortized cost and fair value.

- 57 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

A security is also OTTI if management does not expect to recover all of the amortized cost of the security. In this circumstance, the impairment recognized in earnings represents the estimated credit loss, and is measured by the difference between the present value of expected cash flows and the amortized cost of the security. Where appropriate, models are utilized to estimate the credit loss on a discounted cash flow basis using the security's effective interest rate.

The evaluation of whether we expect to recover the amortized cost of a security is inherently judgmental. The evaluation considers multiple factors including: the magnitude and duration of the unrealized loss; the financial condition of the issuer; the payment structure of the security; external credit ratings; our internal credit ratings; for asset-backed securities, the amount of credit support provided by the structure of the security to absorb credit losses on the underlying collateral; recent events specific to the issuer and the issuer's industry; and whether all scheduled principal and interest payments have been received.

Securities borrowed and securities loaned

Securities borrowed transactions require Schwab to deliver cash to the lender in exchange for securities; the receivables from these transactions are included in receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations. For securities loaned, Schwab receives collateral in the form of cash in an amount equal to or greater than the market value of securities loaned; the payables from these transactions are included in payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations. The market value of securities borrowed and loaned are monitored, with additional collateral obtained or refunded to ensure full collateralization. Fees received or paid are recorded in interest revenue or interest expense.

Bank loans and related allowance for loan losses

Bank loans are recorded at their contractual principal amounts and include unamortized direct origination costs or net purchase discounts or premiums. Direct origination costs and premiums and discounts are recognized in interest revenue using the effective interest method over the contractual life of the loan and are adjusted for actual prepayments. Additionally, loans are recorded net of an allowance for loan losses. The loan portfolio includes four loan types: First Mortgages, HELOCs, PALs, and other loans. We use these segments when developing and documenting our methodology for determining the allowance for loan losses.

PALs are collateralized by marketable securities with liquid markets. Credit lines are over-collateralized dependent on the type of security pledged. Collateral market value is monitored on a daily basis and a borrower's committed line may be reduced or collateral may be liquidated if the collateral is in danger of falling below specified levels. As such, the loss inherent within this portfolio is limited.

Schwab records an allowance for loan losses through a charge to earnings based on our estimate of probable losses in the existing portfolio. We review the allowance for loan losses quarterly, taking into consideration current economic conditions, the composition of the existing loan portfolio, past loss experience, and risks inherent in the portfolio to ensure that the allowance for loan losses is maintained at an appropriate level.

The methodology to establish an allowance for loan losses utilizes statistical models that estimate prepayments, defaults, and probable losses for the loan segments based on predicted behavior of individual loans within the segments. The methodology considers the effects of borrower behavior and a variety of factors including, but not

limited to, interest rates, housing price movements as measured by a housing price index, economic conditions, estimated defaults and foreclosures measured by historical and expected delinquencies, changes in prepayment speeds, LTV ratios, past loss experience, estimates of future loss severities, borrower credit risk, and the adequacy of collateral. The methodology also evaluates concentrations in the loan types, including loan products within those types, year of origination, and geographical distribution of collateral.

Probable losses are forecast using a loan-level simulation of the delinquency status of the loans over the term of the loans. The simulation starts with the current relevant risk indicators, including the current delinquent status of each loan, the estimated current LTV ratio (Estimated Current LTV) of each loan, the term and structure of each loan, current key interest rates including U.S. Treasury and LIBOR rates, and borrower FICO scores. The more significant variables in the simulation include delinquency roll rates, loss severity, housing prices, and interest rates. Delinquency roll rates (i.e., the rates at which loans transition through delinquency stages and ultimately result in a loss) are estimated from our historical loss experience adjusted for current trends and market information. Loss severity estimates are based on our historical loss experience and

- 58 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

market trends. The estimated loss severity (i.e., loss given default) used in the allowance for loan loss methodology for HELOC loans is higher than that used in the methodology for First Mortgages. Housing price trends are derived from historical home price indices and econometric forecasts of future home values. Factors affecting the home price index include housing inventory, unemployment, interest rates, and inflation expectations. Interest rate projections are based on the current term structure of interest rates and historical volatilities to project various possible future interest rate paths. This methodology results in loss factors that are applied to the outstanding balances to determine the allowance for loan loss for each loan type.

Schwab considers loan modifications in which it makes an economic concession to a borrower experiencing financial difficulty to be troubled debt restructurings (TDRs).

Nonaccrual, Nonperforming and Impaired loans

First Mortgages, HELOCs, PALs, and other loans are placed on nonaccrual status upon becoming 90 days past due as to interest or principal (unless the loans are well-secured and in the process of collection), or when the full timely collection of interest or principal becomes uncertain, including loans to borrowers who have filed for bankruptcy. HELOC loans secured by a second lien are placed on non-accrual status if the associated first lien is 90 days or more delinquent, regardless of the payment status of the HELOC. When a loan is placed on nonaccrual status, the accrued and unpaid interest receivable is reversed and the loan is accounted for on the cash or cost recovery method until qualifying for return to accrual status. Generally, a nonaccrual loan may be returned to accrual status when all delinquent interest and principal is repaid and the borrower demonstrates a sustained period of performance, or when the loan is both well-secured and in the process of collection and collectability is no longer doubtful. Loans on nonaccrual status and other real estate owned are considered nonperforming assets. Nonaccrual loans, other real estate owned, and TDRs are considered impaired assets, as it is probable we will not collect all amounts due.

Loan Charge-Offs

The Company charges off a loan in the period that it is deemed uncollectible and records a reduction in the allowance for loan losses and the loan balance. Our charge-off policy for First Mortgage and HELOC loans is to assess the value of the property when the loan has been delinquent for 180 days or has been discharged in bankruptcy proceedings, regardless of whether the property is in foreclosure, and charge-off the amount of the loan balance in excess of the estimated current value of the underlying property less estimated costs to sell.

Equipment, office facilities, and property

Equipment, office facilities, and property are recorded at cost net of accumulated depreciation and amortization, except for land, which is recorded at cost. Equipment, office facilities, and property include certain capitalized costs of acquired or internally developed software. Costs for internally developed software are capitalized when the costs relate to development of approved projects for our internal needs that result in additional functionality. Costs related to preliminary project and post-project activities are expensed as incurred. Equipment, office facilities, and property (other than land) are depreciated on a straight-line basis over their estimated useful lives. Estimated useful lives are as follows:

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Equipment and office facilities | 5 to 10 years |
| Buildings | 20 to 40 years |
| Software | 3 to 10 years ⁽¹⁾ |

Leasehold improvements Lesser of useful life or lease term

(1) Amortized over contractual term if less than three years.

Equipment, office facilities, and property are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of such assets may not be recoverable.

- 59 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Goodwill

Goodwill represents the fair value of acquired businesses in excess of the fair value of the individually identified net assets acquired. Goodwill is not amortized but is tested for impairment annually or whenever indications of impairment exist. Impairment exists when the carrying amount of goodwill exceeds its implied fair value, resulting in an impairment charge for this excess. Our annual impairment testing date is April 1st. Schwab can elect to qualitatively assess goodwill for impairment if it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit exceeds its carrying value. A qualitative assessment considers macroeconomic and other industry-specific factors, such as trends in short-term and long-term interest rates and the ability to access capital, and Company specific factors such as market capitalization in excess of net assets, trends in revenue generating activities, and merger or acquisition activity.

If the Company elects to bypass qualitatively assessing goodwill, or it is not more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit exceeds its carrying value, management estimates the fair values of each of the Company's reporting units (defined as the Company's businesses for which financial information is available and reviewed regularly by management) and compares it to their carrying values. The estimated fair values of the reporting units are established using an income approach based on a discounted cash flow model that includes significant assumptions about the future operating results and cash flows of each reporting unit, a market approach which compares each reporting unit to comparable companies in their respective industries, as well as a market capitalization analysis.

Intangible assets

Finite-lived intangible assets are amortized over their useful lives in a manner that best reflects their economic benefit. All intangible assets are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of such assets may not be recoverable.

Low-Income Housing Tax Credit (LIHTC) Investments

We account for investments in qualified affordable housing projects using the proportional amortization method if the applicable requirements are met. The proportional amortization method amortizes the cost of the investment over the period in which the investor expects to receive tax credits and other tax benefits, and the resulting amortization is recognized as a component of taxes on income. The carrying value of LIHTC investments is included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets. Unfunded commitments related to LIHTC investments are included in accrued expenses and other liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets.

Guarantees and indemnifications

Schwab recognizes, at the inception of a guarantee, a liability equal to the estimated fair value of the obligation undertaken in issuing the guarantee. The fair values of obligations relating to guarantees are estimated based on transactions for similar guarantees or expected present value measures.

Advertising and market development

Advertising and market development activities include the cost to produce and distribute marketing campaigns as well as client incentives and discounts. Such costs are generally expensed when incurred.

Income taxes

Schwab provides for income taxes on all transactions that have been recognized in the consolidated financial statements. Accordingly, deferred tax assets are adjusted to reflect the tax rates at which future taxable amounts will likely be settled or realized. The effects of tax rate changes on future deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities, as well as other changes in income tax laws, are recorded in earnings in the period during which such changes are enacted. Uncertain tax positions are evaluated to determine whether they are more likely than not to be sustained upon examination. When tax positions are more likely than not to be sustained upon examination the difference between positions taken on tax return filings and estimated potential tax settlement outcomes are recognized in accrued expenses and other liabilities. If a position is not more likely than not to be sustained, then none of the tax benefit is recognized in Schwab's financial statements. Accrued interest

- 60 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

and penalties relating to unrecognized tax benefits is recorded in taxes on income. Schwab records amounts within AOCI net of taxes. Income tax effects are released from AOCI using the specific-identification approach.

Share-based compensation

Share-based compensation includes employee and board of director stock options and restricted stock units. Schwab measures compensation expense for these share-based payment arrangements based on their estimated fair values as of the grant date. The fair value of the share-based award is recognized over the vesting period as share-based compensation. Share-based compensation expense is based on options or units expected to vest and therefore is reduced for estimated forfeitures. Per the Company's accounting policy election, forfeitures are estimated at the time of grant and reviewed annually based on the Company's historical forfeiture experience. Share-based compensation expense is adjusted in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from estimated forfeitures. Beginning January 1, 2017, the excess tax benefits or deficiencies from the exercise of stock options and the vesting of restricted stock units are recorded in taxes on income.

Earnings per common share

EPS is computed using the two-class method. Preferred stock dividends and undistributed earnings and dividends allocated to participating securities are subtracted from net income in determining net income available to common stockholders. Basic EPS is computed by dividing net income available to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period. The computation of diluted EPS is similar to the computation of basic EPS except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if dilutive potential common shares had been issued. Dilutive potential common shares include, if dilutive, the effect of outstanding stock options and non-vested restricted stock units.

Fair values of assets and liabilities

Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or the price paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. Fair value measurement accounting guidance describes the fair value hierarchy for disclosing assets and liabilities measured at fair value based on the inputs used to value them. The fair value hierarchy maximizes the use of observable inputs and minimizes the use of unobservable inputs. Observable inputs are based on market pricing data obtained from third-party sources independent of the Company. A quoted price in an active market provides the most reliable evidence of fair value and is generally used to measure fair value whenever available.

Unobservable inputs reflect management's judgment about the assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability. Where inputs used to measure fair value of an asset or liability are from different levels of the hierarchy, the asset or liability is categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the fair value measurement in its entirety. Assessing the significance of a particular input requires judgment. The fair value hierarchy includes three levels based on the objectivity of the inputs as follows:

• Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets as of the measurement date for identical assets or liabilities that the Company has the ability to access.

• Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices included in Level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly. Level 2 inputs include quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets, and inputs other than quoted prices that are observable for the asset or liability, such as interest rates, benchmark

yields, issuer spreads, new issue data, and collateral performance.

Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for the asset or liability, and include situations where there is little, if any, market activity for the asset or liability.

Assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis

Schwab's assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis include: certain cash equivalents, certain investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes, other securities owned, and AFS securities. The Company uses the market approach to determine the fair value of assets and liabilities. When available, the Company uses quoted

- 61 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

prices in active markets to measure the fair value of assets and liabilities. When utilizing market data and bid-ask spread, the Company uses the price within the bid-ask spread that best represents fair value. When quoted prices do not exist, the Company uses prices obtained from independent third-party pricing services to measure the fair value of investment assets. We generally obtain prices from three independent third-party pricing sources for assets recorded at fair value.

Our primary independent pricing service provides prices based on observable trades and discounted cash flows that incorporate observable information such as yields for similar types of securities (a benchmark interest rate plus observable spreads) and weighted-average maturity for the same or similar “to-be-issued” securities. We compare the prices obtained from the primary independent pricing service to the prices obtained from the additional independent pricing services to determine if the price obtained from the primary independent pricing service is reasonable. Schwab does not adjust the prices received from independent third-party pricing services unless such prices are inconsistent with the definition of fair value and result in material differences in the amounts recorded.

- 62 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

New Accounting Standards

Adoption of New Accounting Standards

| Standard | Description | Date of Adoption | Effects on the Financial Statements or Other Significant Matters |
|---|---|------------------|--|
| Accounting Standards Update (ASU) 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606) and related ASUs | <p>Clarifies that revenue from contracts with clients should be recognized in a manner that depicts the timing of the related transfer of goods or performance of services at an amount that reflects the expected consideration.</p> <p>Adoption allows either full or modified retrospective transition. Full retrospective transition required a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the earliest comparative period presented. Modified retrospective transition required a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the reporting period in which the entity first applies the new guidance.</p> | January 1, 2018 | <p>The guidance does not apply to revenue earned from the Company's loans and securities. Accordingly, net interest revenue was not impacted. The primary impact for the Company was the capitalization on the consolidated balance sheets of sales commissions paid to employees for obtaining new contracts with clients. These capitalized costs resulted in an asset of \$219 million and a related deferred tax liability of \$52 million upon adoption. The asset is being amortized to expense over time as the related revenues are recognized.</p> <p>The Company adopted the revenue recognition guidance using the modified retrospective method for all contracts that were not completed as of January 1, 2018. Further details of the impact of adoption are included below in this Note as well as in Note 3.</p> |
| ASU 2016-01, "Financial Instruments Overall (Subtopic 825-10)" and ASU 2018-03, "Technical Corrections and Improvements to Financial Instruments Overall (Subtopic 825-10)" | <p>Requires: (i) equity investments to be measured at fair value, with changes in fair value recognized in net income, unless the equity method is applied or the equity investments do not have readily determinable fair values in which case a practical alternative may be elected; (ii) use of an exit price when measuring the fair value of financial instruments for disclosures; (iii) separate presentation of financial assets and liabilities by measurement category and form of instrument on the balance sheet or in the accompanying notes.</p> <p>Adoption requires a cumulative effect adjustment to the balance sheet as of the</p> | January 1, 2018 | <p>The Company adopted this guidance on a prospective basis for its equity securities that do not have readily determinable fair values. No other significant changes resulted from adoption. Therefore, there was no material impact on the Company's financial statements.</p> <p>The Company elected to use the alternative to fair value measurement for its equity securities that do not have readily determinable fair values. These equity securities will be adjusted for impairment and observable price changes of the identical or similar investments of the same issuer, as applicable. Schwab refers to this approach as the adjusted</p> |

beginning of the year of initial application, except for certain changes that require prospective adoption.

cost method. This method was applied to an immaterial amount of Community Reinvestment Act (CRA) investments included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.

The Company adopted this guidance on a retrospective basis. The Company has significant amounts of restricted cash and cash equivalents due to its business as a broker-dealer.

ASU 2016-18, “Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230) – Restricted Cash a Consensus of the Emerging Issues Task Force”

Requires that the statement of cash flows explain the change during the period in the total cash and cash equivalents, including restricted cash and cash equivalents.

Adoption requires retrospective presentation of the statement of cash flows to include restricted cash and cash equivalents in the beginning and ending amounts.

As a result of the adoption, changes in restricted cash and cash equivalents January 1, 2018, included within cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes in the consolidated balance sheets are now presented with changes in cash and cash equivalents throughout the consolidated statements of cash flows. The amount of restricted cash and cash equivalents is included in a separate table in the consolidated statement of cash flows.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| Standard | Description | Date of Adoption | Effects on the Financial Statements or Other Significant Matters |
|---|---|------------------|--|
| ASU 2018-02, "Income Statement – Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income" | Permits reclassification of the impacts on certain tax affected items included in AOCI that were adjusted through income from continuing operations rather than AOCI upon the effective date of the Tax Act. Adoption provides for retrospective adoption to all periods presented and impacted by the Tax Act or as of the beginning of the period of adoption. | January 1, 2018 | The Company adopted this guidance as of January 1, 2018. The Company elected to reclassify the income tax effects of the Tax Act from items in AOCI into retained earnings as of the beginning of the period of adoption. Adoption resulted in a reduction in AOCI and a corresponding increase in retained earnings of \$33 million. |

New Accounting Standards Not Yet Adopted

| Standard | Description | Required Date of Adoption | Effects on the Financial Statements or Other Significant Matters |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---|
| ASU 2016-02, "Leases (Topic 842)" | Amends the accounting for leases by lessees and lessors. The primary change from the new guidance is the recognition of right-of-use assets and lease liabilities by lessees for those leases classified as operating leases. Additional changes include accounting for lease origination and executory costs, required lessee reassessments during the lease term due to changes in circumstances, and expanded lease disclosures. Adoption provides for modified retrospective transition as of the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented in the financial statements in which the entity first applies the new standard or prospectively with an adjustment as of the beginning of the period of adoption. Certain transition relief is permitted if elected by the entity. | January 1, 2019 | The Company adopted the new lease accounting guidance prospectively as of January 1, 2019, which will result in a gross up of the consolidated balance sheet due to recognition of right-of-use assets and lease liabilities primarily related to CS&Co leases of office space and branches. These amounts will be based on the present value of our remaining operating lease payments. The Company's right of use assets and related lease liabilities upon adoption will be \$596 million and \$662 million, respectively. |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| Standard | Description | Required Date of Adoption | Effects on the Financial Statements or Other Significant Matters |
|---|--|--|---|
| ASU 2016-13, "Financial Instruments – Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments" | <p>Provides guidance for recognizing impairment of most debt instruments measured at amortized cost, including loans and HTM debt securities. Requires estimating current expected credit losses (CECL) over the remaining life of an instrument or a portfolio of instruments with similar risk characteristics based on relevant information about past events, current conditions, and reasonable forecasts. The initial estimate of, and the subsequent changes in, CECL will be recognized as credit loss expense through current earnings and will be reflected as an allowance for credit losses offsetting the carrying value of the financial instrument(s) on the balance sheet. Amends the OTTI model for AFS debt securities by requiring the use of an allowance, rather than directly reducing the carrying value of the security, and eliminating consideration of the length of time such security has been in an unrealized loss position as a factor in concluding whether a credit loss exists.</p> <p>Adoption requires a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the first reporting period in which the entity applies the new guidance except that a prospective transition is required for AFS debt securities for which an OTTI has been recognized prior to the effective date.</p> | January 1, 2020 (early adoption permitted) | The Company continues to evaluate the impact of this guidance on its financial statements. The Company has finished the majority of its scoping work and assessment of the current state of data and systems. Work is transitioning to designing and building out approaches to address certain asset classes with a focus primarily on a subset of our securities, including corporate debt securities. The Company expects that a large portion of its securities will have zero expectation of credit losses based on industry and regulator views for U.S. treasury and certain government agency-backed securities. We are currently working on in-depth analysis for the other asset types that do not have zero expectation of credit losses to determine our methods and any needed changes to policies and procedures. |
| ASU 2017-08, "Receivables – Nonrefundable Fees and Other Costs (Subtopic 310-20): Premium Amortization on Purchased Callable Debt Securities" | Shortens the amortization period for the premium on certain callable debt securities to the earliest call date. The amendments are applicable to any purchased individual debt security with an explicit and noncontingent call feature with a fixed price on a preset date. ASU 2017-08 does not impact the accounting for callable debt securities held at a discount. | January 1, 2019 (early adoption permitted) | The Company adopted this guidance as of January 1, 2019 using the modified retrospective method. Adoption resulted in an immaterial cumulative-effect adjustment to the opening balance of retained earnings as of the beginning of the period of adoption. |

Adoption requires modified retrospective transition as of the beginning of the period of adoption through a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings.

- 65 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| Standard | Description | Required Date of Adoption | Effects on the Financial Statements or Other Significant Matters |
|---|--|--|--|
| ASU 2018-15, “Intangibles–Goodwill and Other–Internal-Use Software (Subtopic 350-40): Customer’s Accounting for Implementation Costs Incurred in a Cloud Computing Arrangement That Is a Service Contract (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force)” | Aligns the criteria for capitalizing implementation costs for cloud computing arrangements (CCA) that are service contracts with internal-use software that is developed or purchased and CCAs that include an internal-use software license. This guidance requires that the capitalized implementation costs be recognized over the period of the CCA service contract, subject to impairment evaluation on an ongoing basis. The guidance prescribes the balance sheet, income statement, and statement of cash flow classification of the capitalized implementation costs and related amortization expense, and requires additional quantitative and qualitative disclosures. Adoption provides for retrospective or prospective application to all implementation costs incurred after the date of adoption. | January 1, 2020 (early adoption permitted) | Historically, Schwab has expensed implementation costs as they are incurred for CCAs that are service contracts. Therefore, adopting this guidance will change the Company’s accounting treatment for these types of implementation costs. The Company is evaluating the impacts of this guidance on its financial statements. |

The cumulative effect of the changes made to our consolidated January 1, 2018 balance sheet for the adoption of ASU 2014-09, “Revenue – Revenue from Contracts with Customers” and ASU 2018-02, “Other Comprehensive Income – Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income” were as follows:

| | Balance at December 31, 2017 | Adjustments Due to ASU 2014-09 | Adjustments Due to ASU 2018-02 | Balance at January 1, 2018 |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Assets | | | | |
| Other assets ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 2,057 | \$ 167 | \$ — | \$ 2,224 |
| Stockholders’ Equity | | | | |
| Retained earnings | 14,408 | 167 | 33 | 14,608 |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income | (152) | — | (33) | (185) |

⁽¹⁾ Adjustment is comprised of an increase in capitalized contract costs of \$219 million, partially offset by an increase in deferred tax liabilities of \$52 million.

In accordance with the new revenue standard requirements, the disclosure of the impact of adoption on our consolidated statement of income and consolidated balance sheet were as follows:

| | Year Ended December 31, 2018 | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| | Balances | | |
| Statement of Income | As Reported | Without Adoption of ASU 2014-09 | Effect of Change Higher/(Lower) |
| Expenses Excluding Interest | | | |
| Compensation and benefits | \$3,057 | \$ 3,088 | \$ (31) |
| Taxes on income | 1,055 | 1,047 | 8 |
| Net Income | 3,507 | 3,484 | 23 |

- 66 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| Balance Sheet | As of December 31, 2018 | | |
|---|-------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| | As Reported | Balances Without Adoption of ASU 2014-09 | Effect of Change Higher/(Lower) |
| Assets | | | |
| Other assets ⁽¹⁾ | \$2,046 | \$ 1,851 | \$ 195 |
| Liabilities | | | |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities ⁽¹⁾ | 2,954 | 2,949 | 5 |
| Stockholders' Equity | | | |
| Retained earnings | 17,329 | 17,139 | 190 |

⁽¹⁾ Adjustment is comprised of an increase in capitalized contract costs of \$250 million, partially offset by an increase in deferred tax liabilities of \$60 million.

3. Revenue Recognition

Disaggregated Revenue

Disaggregation of Schwab's revenue by major source is as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|--|----------|---------|---------|
| Net interest revenue | | | |
| Interest revenue | \$6,680 | \$4,624 | \$3,493 |
| Interest expense | (857) | (342) | (171) |
| Net interest revenue | 5,823 | 4,282 | 3,322 |
| Asset management and administration fees | | | |
| Mutual funds and ETF service fees | 1,793 | 2,045 | 1,853 |
| Advice solutions | 1,139 | 1,043 | 915 |
| Other | 297 | 304 | 287 |
| Asset management and administration fees | 3,229 | 3,392 | 3,055 |
| Trading revenue | | | |
| Commissions | 685 | 600 | 779 |
| Principal transactions | 78 | 54 | 46 |
| Trading revenue | 763 | 654 | 825 |
| Other | 317 | 290 | 276 |
| Total net revenues | \$10,132 | \$8,618 | \$7,478 |

For a summary of revenue provided by our reportable segments, see Note 22. The recognition of revenue is not impacted by the operating segment in which revenue is generated.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Net interest revenue

Net interest revenue, which is generated from financial instruments covered by various other areas of GAAP, is not within the scope of Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 606, Revenue From Contracts With Customers (ASC 606), and is included in the table above in order to reconcile to total net revenues per the consolidated statements of income. Net interest revenue is the difference between interest generated on interest earning assets and interest paid on funding sources. Our primary interest earning assets include cash and cash equivalents; segregated cash and investments; margin loans, which constitute the majority of receivables from brokerage clients; investment securities; and bank loans. Revenue on interest earning assets is affected by various factors, such as the composition of assets, prevailing interest rates at the time of origination or purchase, changes in interest rates on floating rate securities and loans, and changes in prepayment levels for mortgage related securities and loans. Fees earned and incurred on securities borrowing and lending activities, which are conducted by CS&Co on assets held in client brokerage accounts, are also included in interest revenue and expense.

Asset management and administration fees

The majority of asset management and administration fees are generated through our proprietary and third-party mutual fund and ETF offerings, as well as fee-based advisory solutions. Mutual fund and ETF service fees are charged for investment management, shareholder, and administration services provided to Schwab Funds® and Schwab ETFs™, as well as recordkeeping, shareholder, and administration services provided to third-party funds. Advice solutions fees are charged for brokerage and asset management services provided to advice solutions clients. Both mutual fund and ETF service fees and advice solutions fees are earned and recognized over time. Fees are generally based on a percentage of the daily value of assets under management and are collected on a monthly or quarterly basis.

Trading revenue

Substantially all trading revenue is generated through commissions earned for executing trades for clients in individual equities, options, fixed income securities, and certain third-party mutual funds and ETFs. This revenue is earned and collected when the trades are executed.

Other revenue

Other revenue includes order flow revenue, other service fees, software fees from our portfolio management solutions, exchange processing fees, and nonrecurring gains. Generally, the most significant portion of other revenue is order flow revenue, which is comprised of rebate payments received from execution venues to which CS&Co sends equity and option orders. Order flow revenue is recognized when the trades are executed.

Capitalized contract costs

Capitalized contract costs relate to sales commissions paid to employees for obtaining contracts with clients and are included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets. These costs are amortized to expense on a straight-line basis over a period that is consistent with how the related revenue is recognized. At December 31, 2018 and January 1, 2018, we had \$250 million and \$219 million of capitalized contract costs, respectively. Amortization expense related to capitalized contract costs was \$47 million in 2018, which was recorded in compensation and benefits expense on the consolidated statements of income.

Contract balances

Receivables from contracts with customers within the scope of ASC 606 were \$307 million at December 31, 2018 and \$353 million at January 1, 2018 and were recorded in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets. Schwab does not have any other significant contract assets or contract liability balances as of December 31, 2018 and January 1, 2018.

Unsatisfied performance obligations

We do not have any unsatisfied performance obligations other than those that are subject to an elective practical expedient under ASC 606. The practical expedient applies to and is elected for contracts where we recognize revenue at the amount to which we have the right to invoice for services performed.

- 68 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

4. Receivables from and Payables to Brokerage Clients

Receivables from and payables to brokerage clients are detailed below:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Receivables | | |
| Margin loans, net of allowance for doubtful accounts | \$ 19,273 | \$ 18,331 |
| Other brokerage receivables | 2,378 | 2,245 |
| Receivables from brokerage clients — net | \$ 21,651 | \$ 20,576 |
| Payables | | |
| Interest-bearing payables | \$ 21,990 | \$ 22,840 |
| Non-interest-bearing payables | 10,736 | 8,403 |
| Payables to brokerage clients | \$ 32,726 | \$ 31,243 |

At December 31, 2018 and 2017, approximately 22% of CS&Co's total client accounts were located in California.

5. Other Securities Owned

A summary of securities owned is as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|--------|--------|
| Equity and bond mutual funds | \$ 441 | \$ 318 |
| State and municipal debt obligations | 39 | 52 |
| Equity, U.S. Government and corporate debt, and other securities | 33 | 34 |
| Schwab Funds® money market funds | 26 | 135 |
| Total other securities owned | \$ 539 | \$ 539 |

Equity and bond mutual funds include inventory maintained to facilitate clients' transactions in certain Schwab Funds and third-party mutual funds, and investments made relating to our deferred compensation plan. State and municipal debt obligations, equity, U.S. Government and corporate debt, and other securities include securities to meet clients' trading activities. The positions in Schwab Funds® money market funds arise from certain overnight funding of clients' redemption, check-writing, and debit card activities.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

6. Investment Securities

The amortized cost, gross unrealized gains and losses, and fair value of AFS and HTM securities are as follows:

| December 31, 2018 | Amortized Cost | Gross Unrealized Gains | Gross Unrealized Losses | Fair Value |
|--|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| Available for sale securities | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 25,594 | \$ 44 | \$ 82 | \$ 25,556 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 18,410 | — | 108 | 18,302 |
| Asset-backed securities ⁽¹⁾ | 10,086 | 14 | 15 | 10,085 |
| Corporate debt securities ⁽²⁾ | 7,477 | 10 | 20 | 7,467 |
| Certificates of deposit | 3,682 | 4 | 1 | 3,685 |
| U.S. agency notes | 900 | — | 2 | 898 |
| Commercial paper ^(2,3) | 522 | — | — | 522 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | — | 1 | 49 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 14 | — | — | 14 |
| Total available for sale securities | \$ 66,735 | \$ 72 | \$ 229 | \$ 66,578 |
| Held to maturity securities | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 118,064 | \$ 217 | \$ 2,188 | \$ 116,093 |
| Asset-backed securities ⁽¹⁾ | 18,502 | 83 | 39 | 18,546 |
| Corporate debt securities ⁽²⁾ | 4,477 | 2 | 47 | 4,432 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 1,327 | 24 | 3 | 1,348 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 1,156 | 3 | 17 | 1,142 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 223 | — | 6 | 217 |
| Certificates of deposit | 200 | 1 | — | 201 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | — | 1 | 49 |
| Other | 10 | — | — | 10 |
| Total held to maturity securities | \$ 144,009 | \$ 330 | \$ 2,301 | \$ 142,038 |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | |
| Available for sale securities | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 20,915 | \$ 53 | \$ 39 | \$ 20,929 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 9,583 | — | 83 | 9,500 |
| Asset-backed securities ⁽¹⁾ | 9,019 | 34 | 6 | 9,047 |
| Corporate debt securities ⁽²⁾ | 6,154 | 16 | 1 | 6,169 |
| Certificates of deposit | 2,040 | 2 | 1 | 2,041 |
| U.S. agency notes | 1,914 | — | 8 | 1,906 |
| Commercial paper ⁽²⁾ | 313 | — | — | 313 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 51 | — | 1 | 50 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 40 | — | — | 40 |
| Total available for sale securities | \$ 50,029 | \$ 105 | \$ 139 | \$ 49,995 |
| Held to maturity securities | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 101,197 | \$ 290 | \$ 1,034 | \$ 100,453 |
| Asset-backed securities ⁽¹⁾ | 12,937 | 127 | 2 | 13,062 |
| Corporate debt securities ⁽²⁾ | 4,078 | 13 | 5 | 4,086 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 1,247 | 57 | — | 1,304 |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | |
|--|------------|--------|----------|------------|
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 994 | 10 | 5 | 999 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 223 | — | 3 | 220 |
| Certificates of deposit | 200 | — | — | 200 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | — | 1 | 49 |
| Total held to maturity securities | \$ 120,926 | \$ 497 | \$ 1,050 | \$ 120,373 |

(1) Approximately 36% and 42% of asset-backed securities held as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, were Federal Family Education Loan Program Asset-Backed Securities. Asset-backed securities collateralized by credit card receivables represented approximately 42% and 40% of the asset-backed securities held as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

(2) As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, approximately 26% and 41%, respectively, of the total AFS and HTM investments in corporate debt securities and commercial paper were issued by institutions in the financial services industry. Approximately 18% and 22% of the holdings of these securities were issued by institutions in the information technology industry as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

(3) Included in cash and cash equivalents on the consolidated balance sheet, but excluded from this table is \$4.9 billion of AFS commercial paper. These holdings have maturities of three months or less and an aggregate market value equal to amortized cost.

- 70 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

During 2017, the Company transferred \$24.7 billion of investment securities from the AFS category to the HTM category. These securities had a total net unrealized loss of \$227 million before income tax in AOCI on the date of transfer. The transfer was made to mitigate the potential volatility in regulatory capital from changes in market values in the AFS securities portfolio and the related impact to AOCI in anticipation of Schwab crossing \$250 billion in consolidated assets, which occurred in the second quarter of 2018. The year after a company surpasses \$250 billion in consolidated assets, it can no longer exclude AOCI from regulatory capital. The transfer included U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities, asset-backed securities, corporate debt securities, and U.S. state and municipal securities. The unrealized holding gains and losses on the date of transfer, are reported as a separate component of AOCI and as an adjustment to the purchase premium and discount on the securities transferred. The separate component of AOCI is amortized or accreted into interest income over the remaining life of the securities transferred, offsetting the revised premium or discount amortization or accretion on the transferred assets.

At December 31, 2018, certain banking subsidiaries had pledged securities with a fair value of \$27.2 billion as collateral to secure borrowing capacity on secured credit facilities with the FHLB (see Note 13). CSB also pledges certain investment securities as collateral to secure borrowing capacity at the Federal Reserve Bank discount window, and had pledged securities with a fair value of \$7.9 billion as collateral for this facility at December 31, 2018. CSB also pledges securities issued by federal agencies to secure certain trust deposits. The fair value of these pledged securities was \$906 million at December 31, 2018.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Securities with unrealized losses, aggregated by category and period of continuous unrealized loss, are as follows:

| | Less than 12 months | | 12 months or longer | | Total | |
|--|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses |
| December 31, 2018 | | | | | | |
| Available for sale securities | | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$9,529 | \$ 32 | \$4,257 | \$ 50 | \$13,786 | \$ 82 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 4,951 | 6 | 7,037 | 102 | 11,988 | 108 |
| Asset-backed securities | 4,050 | 9 | 837 | 6 | 4,887 | 15 |
| Corporate debt securities | 3,561 | 19 | 254 | 1 | 3,815 | 20 |
| Certificates of deposit | 1,217 | 1 | 150 | — | 1,367 | 1 |
| U.S. agency notes | 195 | — | 304 | 2 | 499 | 2 |
| Foreign government agency securities | — | — | 49 | 1 | 49 | 1 |
| Total | \$23,503 | \$ 67 | \$12,888 | \$ 162 | \$36,391 | \$ 229 |
| Held to maturity securities | | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$29,263 | \$ 222 | \$56,435 | \$ 1,966 | \$85,698 | \$ 2,188 |
| Asset-backed securities | 6,795 | 35 | 376 | 4 | 7,171 | 39 |
| Corporate debt securities | 2,909 | 29 | 1,066 | 18 | 3,975 | 47 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 77 | 2 | 18 | 1 | 95 | 3 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 283 | 2 | 632 | 15 | 915 | 17 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | — | — | 218 | 6 | 218 | 6 |
| Foreign government agency securities | — | — | 49 | 1 | 49 | 1 |
| Total | \$39,327 | \$ 290 | \$58,794 | \$ 2,011 | \$98,121 | \$ 2,301 |
| Total securities with unrealized losses ⁽¹⁾ | \$62,830 | \$ 357 | \$71,682 | \$ 2,173 | \$134,512 | \$ 2,530 |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | | |
| Available for sale securities | | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$5,696 | \$ 21 | \$2,548 | \$ 18 | \$8,244 | \$ 39 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 4,625 | 11 | 4,875 | 72 | 9,500 | 83 |
| Asset-backed securities | 904 | 3 | 424 | 3 | 1,328 | 6 |
| Corporate debt securities | 736 | 1 | 120 | — | 856 | 1 |
| Certificates of deposit | 799 | 1 | — | — | 799 | 1 |
| U.S. agency notes | 99 | — | 1,807 | 8 | 1,906 | 8 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | 1 | — | — | 50 | 1 |
| Total | \$12,909 | \$ 38 | \$9,774 | \$ 101 | \$22,683 | \$ 139 |
| Held to maturity securities | | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$42,102 | \$ 310 | \$24,753 | \$ 724 | \$66,855 | \$ 1,034 |
| Asset-backed securities | 1,124 | 2 | 72 | — | 1,196 | 2 |
| Corporate debt securities | 1,078 | 5 | — | — | 1,078 | 5 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 607 | 5 | — | — | 607 | 5 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 220 | 3 | — | — | 220 | 3 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 49 | 1 | — | — | 49 | 1 |
| Total | \$45,180 | \$ 326 | \$24,825 | \$ 724 | \$70,005 | \$ 1,050 |
| Total securities with unrealized losses ⁽²⁾ | \$58,089 | \$ 364 | \$34,599 | \$ 825 | \$92,688 | \$ 1,189 |

- (1) The number of investment positions with unrealized losses totaled 441 for AFS securities and 1,524 for HTM securities.
- (2) The number of investment positions with unrealized losses totaled 251 for AFS securities and 938 for HTM securities.

- 72 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

At December 31, 2018, substantially all securities in the investment portfolios were rated investment grade. U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities do not have explicit credit ratings; however, management considers these to be of the highest credit quality and rating given the guarantee of principal and interest by the U.S. government or U.S. government-sponsored enterprises.

Management evaluates whether investment securities are OTTI on a quarterly basis as described in Note 2. Amounts recognized as OTTI in earnings or other comprehensive income were immaterial in 2018, 2017, and 2016. As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company did not hold any securities on which OTTI was previously recognized.

In the below table, mortgage-backed securities have been allocated to maturity groupings based on final contractual maturities. As borrowers may have the right to call or prepay certain obligations underlying our investment securities, actual maturities may differ from the scheduled contractual maturities presented below.

The maturities of AFS and HTM securities are as follows:

| December 31, 2018 | Within 1 year | After 1 year through 5 years | After 5 years through 10 years | After 10 years | Total |
|--|------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------|
| Available for sale securities | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 153 | \$ 3,481 | \$ 12,100 | \$ 9,822 | \$ 25,556 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 14,164 | 4,138 | — | — | 18,302 |
| Asset-backed securities | — | 8,445 | 1,240 | 400 | 10,085 |
| Corporate debt securities | 1,755 | 5,712 | — | — | 7,467 |
| Certificates of deposit | 1,984 | 1,701 | — | — | 3,685 |
| U.S. agency notes | 499 | 399 | — | — | 898 |
| Commercial paper | 522 | — | — | — | 522 |
| Foreign government agency securities | — | 49 | — | — | 49 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | — | — | — | 14 | 14 |
| Total fair value | \$ 19,077 | \$ 23,925 | \$ 13,340 | \$ 10,236 | \$ 66,578 |
| Total amortized cost | \$ 19,111 | \$ 24,010 | \$ 13,382 | \$ 10,232 | \$ 66,735 |
| Weighted-average yield ⁽¹⁾ | 1.80 % | 2.71 % | 2.61 % | 2.70 % | 2.43 % |
| Held to maturity securities | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 256 | \$ 14,960 | \$ 34,008 | \$ 66,869 | \$ 116,093 |
| Asset-backed securities | — | 2,106 | 9,144 | 7,296 | 18,546 |
| Corporate debt securities | 137 | 3,550 | 745 | — | 4,432 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | — | 59 | 309 | 980 | 1,348 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | — | 356 | — | 786 | 1,142 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | — | — | 217 | — | 217 |
| Certificates of deposit | — | 201 | — | — | 201 |
| Foreign government agency securities | — | 49 | — | — | 49 |
| Other | — | — | — | 10 | 10 |
| Total fair value | \$ 393 | \$ 21,281 | \$ 44,423 | \$ 75,941 | \$ 142,038 |
| Total amortized cost | \$ 395 | \$ 21,446 | \$ 44,925 | \$ 77,243 | \$ 144,009 |
| Weighted-average yield ⁽¹⁾ | 1.97 % | 2.56 % | 2.69 % | 2.63 % | 2.63 % |

⁽¹⁾ The weighted-average yield is computed using the amortized cost at December 31, 2018.

Proceeds and gross realized gains and losses from sales of AFS securities are as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|-------------------------|-------|---------|---------|
| Proceeds | \$115 | \$8,617 | \$5,537 |
| Gross realized gains | — | 12 | 4 |
| Gross realized losses | — | — | — |

- 73 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

7. Bank Loans and Related Allowance for Loan Losses

The composition of bank loans and delinquency analysis by loan type is as follows:

| December 31, 2018 | Current | 30-59 days past due | 60-89 days past due | >90 days past due and other nonaccrual loans ⁽³⁾ | Total past due and other nonaccrual loans | Total loans | Allowance for loan losses | Total bank loans – net |
|----------------------------------|----------|---------------------|---------------------|---|---|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| First Mortgages ^(1,2) | \$10,349 | \$ 21 | \$ 2 | \$ 12 | \$ 35 | \$10,384 | \$ 14 | \$10,370 |
| HELOCs ^(1,2) | 1,493 | 3 | 1 | 8 | 12 | 1,505 | 5 | 1,500 |
| Pledged asset lines | 4,558 | 3 | — | — | 3 | 4,561 | — | 4,561 |
| Other | 180 | — | — | — | — | 180 | 2 | 178 |
| Total bank loans | \$16,580 | \$ 27 | \$ 3 | \$ 20 | \$ 50 | \$16,630 | \$ 21 | \$16,609 |

December 31, 2017

| | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|-------|------|-------|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| First Mortgages ^(1,2) | \$9,983 | \$ 14 | \$ 2 | \$ 17 | \$ 33 | \$10,016 | \$ 16 | \$10,000 |
| HELOCs ^(1,2) | 1,928 | — | 3 | 12 | 15 | 1,943 | 8 | 1,935 |
| Pledged asset lines | 4,361 | 4 | 4 | — | 8 | 4,369 | — | 4,369 |
| Other | 176 | — | — | — | — | 176 | 2 | 174 |
| Total bank loans | \$16,448 | \$ 18 | \$ 9 | \$ 29 | \$ 56 | \$16,504 | \$ 26 | \$16,478 |

⁽¹⁾ First Mortgages and HELOCs include unamortized premiums and discounts and direct origination costs of \$73 million and \$77 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

⁽²⁾ At December 31, 2018 and 2017, 47% and 48%, respectively, of the First Mortgage and HELOC portfolios were concentrated in California. These loans have performed in a manner consistent with the portfolio as a whole.

⁽³⁾ There were no loans accruing interest that were contractually 90 days or more past due at December 31, 2018 or 2017.

At December 31, 2018, CSB had pledged \$11.1 billion of First Mortgages and HELOCs as collateral to secure borrowing capacity on a secured credit facility with the FHLB (see Note 13).

Substantially all of the bank loans were collectively evaluated for impairment at both December 31, 2018 and 2017.

Changes in the allowance for loan losses were as follows:

| | December 31, 2018 | | | | December 31, 2017 | | | | December 31, 2016 | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|--------|-------|----------------------|-------------------|--------|-------|----------------------|-------------------|--------|-------|----------------------|
| | First Mortgages | HELOCs | Other | Total ⁽¹⁾ | First Mortgages | HELOCs | Other | Total ⁽¹⁾ | First Mortgages | HELOCs | Other | Total ⁽¹⁾ |
| Balance at beginning of year | \$16 | \$ 8 | \$ 2 | \$26 | \$17 | \$ 8 | \$ 1 | \$26 | \$20 | \$ 11 | — | \$31 |
| Charge-offs | — | — | (1) | (1) | (2) | (1) | — | (3) | (1) | (1) | — | (2) |
| Recoveries | 1 | 1 | — | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 1 | — | 2 |
| Provision for loan losses | (3) | (4) | 1 | (6) | — | — | — | — | (3) | (3) | 1 | (5) |
| Balance at end of year | \$14 | \$ 5 | \$ 2 | \$21 | \$16 | \$ 8 | \$ 2 | \$26 | \$17 | \$ 8 | \$ 1 | \$26 |

⁽¹⁾ All PALs were fully collateralized by securities with fair values in excess of borrowings at December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016.

A summary of impaired bank loan-related assets is as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|-------|-------|
| Nonaccrual loans ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 21 | \$ 28 |
| Other real estate owned ⁽²⁾ | 3 | 3 |
| Total nonperforming assets | 24 | 31 |
| Troubled debt restructurings | 4 | 11 |
| Total impaired assets | \$ 28 | \$ 42 |

⁽¹⁾ Nonaccrual loans include nonaccrual troubled debt restructurings.

⁽²⁾ Included in Other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.

- 74 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Credit Quality

In addition to monitoring delinquency, Schwab monitors the credit quality of First Mortgages and HELOCs by stratifying the portfolios by the following:

- Year of origination;
- Borrower FICO scores at origination (Origination FICO);
- Updated borrower FICO scores (Updated FICO);
- Loan-to-value (LTV) ratios at origination (Origination LTV); and
- Estimated current LTV ratios (Estimated Current LTV).

Borrowers' FICO scores are provided by an independent third-party credit reporting service and updated quarterly. The Origination LTV and Estimated Current LTV for a HELOC include any first lien mortgage outstanding on the same property at the time of the HELOC's origination. The Estimated Current LTV for each loan is updated on a monthly basis by reference to a home price appreciation index.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

The credit quality indicators of the bank loan portfolio are detailed below:

| December 31, 2018 | Balance | Weighted Average Updated FICO | Percent of Loans that are on Nonaccrual Status | |
|---|-----------------|--|--|----------|
| First Mortgages | | | | |
| Estimated Current LTV | | | | |
| <70% | \$9,396 | 776 | 0.04 | % |
| >70% – <90% | 985 | 769 | 0.41 | % |
| >90% – <100% | 2 | 717 | — | |
| >100% | 1 | 753 | — | |
| Total | \$10,384 | 775 | 0.07 | % |
| HELOCs | | | | |
| Estimated Current LTV ⁽¹⁾ | | | | |
| <70% | \$1,416 | 770 | 0.13 | % |
| >70% – <90% | 80 | 752 | 0.60 | % |
| >90% – <100% | 6 | 729 | 3.36 | % |
| >100% | 3 | 702 | — | |
| Total | \$1,505 | 769 | 0.17 | % |
| Pledged asset lines | | | | |
| Weighted Average LTV ⁽¹⁾ | | | | |
| =70% | \$4,561 | 766 | — | |
| December 31, 2017 | Balance | Weighted Average Updated FICO | Percent of Loans that are on Nonaccrual Status | |
| First Mortgages | | | | |
| Estimated Current LTV | | | | |
| <70% | \$9,046 | 775 | 0.09 | % |
| >70% – <90% | 961 | 769 | 0.46 | % |
| >90% – <100% | 5 | 714 | 10.49 | % |
| >100% | 4 | 713 | 6.23 | % |
| Total | \$10,016 | 775 | 0.14 | % |
| HELOCs | | | | |
| Estimated Current LTV ⁽¹⁾ | | | | |
| <70% | \$1,773 | 772 | 0.18 | % |
| >70% – <90% | 148 | 755 | 0.84 | % |
| >90% – <100% | 14 | 742 | 2.85 | % |
| >100% | 8 | 718 | 4.91 | % |
| Total | \$1,943 | 770 | 0.27 | % |
| Pledged asset lines | | | | |
| Weighted Average LTV ⁽¹⁾ | | | | |
| =70% | \$4,369 | 765 | — | |

⁽¹⁾ Represents the LTV for the full line of credit (drawn and undrawn).

- 76 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| December 31, 2018 | First Mortgages | HELOCs |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Year of origination | | |
| Pre-2014 | \$ 1,979 | \$ 1,051 |
| 2014 | 408 | 89 |
| 2015 | 1,050 | 106 |
| 2016 | 2,606 | 95 |
| 2017 | 2,366 | 99 |
| 2018 | 1,975 | 65 |
| Total | \$ 10,384 | \$ 1,505 |
| Origination FICO | | |
| <620 | \$ 5 | \$ — |
| 620 – 679 | 83 | 8 |
| 680 – 739 | 1,626 | 282 |
| >740 | 8,670 | 1,215 |
| Total | \$ 10,384 | \$ 1,505 |
| Origination LTV | | |
| <70% | \$ 7,815 | \$ 1,064 |
| >70% – <90% | 2,564 | 434 |
| >90% – <100% | 5 | 7 |
| Total | \$ 10,384 | \$ 1,505 |
| December 31, 2017 | First Mortgages | HELOCs |
| Year of origination | | |
| Pre-2014 | \$ 2,804 | \$ 1,496 |
| 2014 | 530 | 116 |
| 2015 | 1,218 | 128 |
| 2016 | 2,886 | 111 |
| 2017 | 2,578 | 92 |
| Total | \$ 10,016 | \$ 1,943 |
| Origination FICO | | |
| <620 | \$ 6 | \$ 1 |
| 620 – 679 | 89 | 10 |
| 680 – 739 | 1,569 | 365 |
| >740 | 8,352 | 1,567 |
| Total | \$ 10,016 | \$ 1,943 |
| Origination LTV | | |
| <70% | \$ 7,569 | \$ 1,360 |
| >70% – <90% | 2,441 | 574 |
| >90% – <100% | 6 | 9 |
| Total | \$ 10,016 | \$ 1,943 |

At December 31, 2018, First Mortgage loans of \$9.4 billion had adjustable interest rates. Substantially all of these mortgages have initial fixed interest rates for three to ten years and interest rates that adjust annually thereafter. Approximately 31% of the balance of these mortgages consisted of loans with interest-only payment terms. The

interest rates on approximately 64% of the balance of these interest-only loans are not scheduled to reset for three or more years. Schwab's mortgage loans do not include interest terms described as temporary introductory rates below current market rates.

- 77 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

The HELOC product has a 30-year loan term with an initial draw period of ten years from the date of origination. After the initial draw period, the balance outstanding at such time is converted to a 20-year amortizing loan. The interest rate during the initial draw period and the 20-year amortizing period is a floating rate based on the prime rate plus a margin. HELOCs that convert to an amortizing loan may experience higher delinquencies and higher loss rates than those in the initial draw period. The allowance for loan loss methodology takes this increased inherent risk into consideration.

The following table presents when current outstanding HELOCs will convert to amortizing loans:

| December 31, 2018 | Balance |
|--|----------|
| Converted to amortizing loan by period end | \$ 677 |
| Within 1 year | 83 |
| > 1 year – 3 years | 118 |
| > 3 years – 5 years | 173 |
| > 5 years | 454 |
| Total | \$ 1,505 |

At December 31, 2018, \$1.2 billion of the HELOC portfolio was secured by second liens on the associated properties. Second lien mortgage loans typically possess a higher degree of credit risk given the subordination to the first lien holder in the event of default. In addition to the credit monitoring activities described previously, Schwab also monitors credit risk by reviewing the delinquency status of the first lien loan on the associated property. At December 31, 2018, the borrowers on approximately 51% of HELOC loan balances outstanding only paid the minimum amount due.

8. Equipment, Office Facilities, and Property

Equipment, office facilities, and property are detailed below:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|----------|----------|
| Software | \$1,699 | \$1,490 |
| Buildings | 945 | 810 |
| Leasehold improvements | 367 | 357 |
| Construction in progress | 248 | 142 |
| Furniture and equipment | 219 | 193 |
| Information technology equipment | 206 | 326 |
| Land | 179 | 167 |
| Telecommunications equipment | 69 | 66 |
| Total equipment, office facilities, and property | 3,932 | 3,551 |
| Accumulated depreciation and amortization | (2,163) | (2,080) |
| Total equipment, office facilities, and property — net | \$1,769 | \$1,471 |

Depreciation and amortization expense for equipment, office facilities, and property was \$277 million, \$232 million, and \$197 million in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

9. Goodwill

The changes in the carrying amount of goodwill, as allocated to our reportable segments, are presented in the following table:

| | Investor Services | Advisor Services | Total |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|----------|
| Balance at December 31, 2016 | \$ 1,096 | \$ 131 | \$ 1,227 |
| Goodwill acquired and other changes during the period | — | — | — |
| Balance at December 31, 2017 | 1,096 | 131 | 1,227 |
| Goodwill acquired and other changes during the period | — | — | — |
| Balance at December 31, 2018 | \$ 1,096 | \$ 131 | \$ 1,227 |

As of our annual testing date, we performed a qualitative assessment of each of the Company's reporting units. Based on the Company's analysis, fair value significantly exceeded the carrying value for all reporting units and we concluded that goodwill was not impaired. Schwab did not recognize any goodwill impairment in any of the years presented.

10. Other Assets

The components of other assets are as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|---------|---------|
| Interest and dividends receivable | \$586 | \$413 |
| Other investments ⁽¹⁾ | 428 | 376 |
| Accounts receivable ⁽²⁾ | 410 | 461 |
| Capitalized contract costs, net | 250 | — |
| Intangible assets, net of accumulated amortization of \$299 and \$270 ⁽³⁾ | 152 | 108 |
| Prepaid expenses | 122 | 126 |
| FHLB stock ⁽⁴⁾ | 32 | 405 |
| Deferred tax asset — net | 3 | 76 |
| Other | 63 | 92 |
| Total other assets | \$2,046 | \$2,057 |

⁽¹⁾ Predominantly CRA-related, including LIHTC investments.

⁽²⁾ Accounts receivable predominantly includes receivables from contracts with customers and a receivable from our loan servicer.

⁽³⁾ Exclusive of indefinite-lived intangible assets of \$74 million and \$1 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, future amortization over the next five years and thereafter is expected to total \$77 million. Amortization expense for intangible assets was \$29 million in 2018, and \$37 million in both 2017 and 2016.

⁽⁴⁾ Investments in stock of the FHLB can only be sold to the issuer at its par value. Any cash dividends received from these investments are recognized as interest revenue in the consolidated statements of income.

11. Variable Interest Entities

As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, all of Schwab's involvement with VIEs is through CSB's CRA-related investments and most of those related to LIHTC investments. As part of CSB's community reinvestment initiatives, CSB invests in funds that make equity investments in multifamily affordable housing properties. CSB receives tax credits and other tax benefits for these investments.

- 79 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Aggregate assets, liabilities and maximum exposure to loss

The aggregate assets, liabilities, and maximum exposure to loss from those VIEs in which Schwab holds a variable interest, but is not the primary beneficiary, are summarized in the table below:

| | December 31, 2018 | | | December 31, 2017 | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| | Aggregate assets | Aggregate liabilities | Maximum exposure to loss | Aggregate assets | Aggregate liabilities | Maximum exposure to loss |
| LIHTC Investments ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 338 | \$ 188 | \$ 338 | \$ 304 | \$ 203 | \$ 304 |
| Other CRA Investments ⁽²⁾ | 70 | — | 124 | 69 | — | 125 |
| Total | \$ 408 | \$ 188 | \$ 462 | \$ 373 | \$ 203 | \$ 429 |

⁽¹⁾ Aggregate assets and aggregate liabilities are included in other assets and accrued expenses and other liabilities, respectively, on the consolidated balance sheets.

⁽²⁾ Other CRA investments are recorded using either the adjusted cost method, equity method, or as HTM securities. Aggregate assets are included in HTM securities, bank loans – net, or other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.

Schwab's maximum exposure to loss would result from the loss of the investments, including any committed amounts. During the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, Schwab did not provide or intend to provide financial or other support to the VIEs that it was not contractually required to provide. CSB's funding of these remaining commitments is dependent upon the occurrence of certain conditions, and CSB expects to pay substantially all of these commitments between 2019 and 2022.

12. Bank Deposits

Bank deposits consist of interest-bearing and non-interest-bearing deposits as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|------------|------------|
| Interest-bearing deposits: | | |
| Deposits swept from brokerage accounts | \$ 212,311 | \$ 148,212 |
| Checking | 12,523 | 13,388 |
| Savings and other | 5,827 | 7,264 |
| Total interest-bearing deposits | 230,661 | 168,864 |
| Non-interest-bearing deposits | 762 | 792 |
| Total bank deposits | \$ 231,423 | \$ 169,656 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

13. Borrowings

CSC's Senior Notes are unsecured obligations and rank equally with the other unsecured senior debt. CSC may redeem some or all of the Senior Notes of each series prior to their maturity, subject to certain restrictions, and the payment of an applicable make-whole premium in certain instances. Interest is payable semi-annually for the fixed-rate Senior Notes and quarterly for the floating-rate Senior Notes. The following table lists long-term debt by instrument outstanding as of December 31, 2018 and 2017.

| | Principal | |
|--|------------------|--------------------|
| | Date of Issuance | Amount Outstanding |
| Fixed-Rate Senior Notes: | | |
| 1.500% due March 10, 2018 ⁽¹⁾ | 03/10/15 | \$— \$625 |
| 2.200% due July 25, 2018 ⁽²⁾ | 07/25/13 | — 275 |
| 4.450% due July 22, 2020 | 07/22/10 | 700 700 |
| 3.250% due May 21, 2021 | 05/22/18 | 600 — |
| 3.225% due September 1, 2022 | 08/29/12 | 256 256 |
| 2.650% due January 25, 2023 | 12/07/17 | 800 800 |
| 3.550% due February 1, 2024 | 10/31/18 | 500 — |
| 3.000% due March 10, 2025 | 03/10/15 | 375 375 |
| 3.850% due May 21, 2025 | 05/22/18 | 750 — |
| 3.450% due February 13, 2026 | 11/13/15 | 350 350 |
| 3.200% due March 2, 2027 | 03/02/17 | 650 650 |
| 3.200% due January 25, 2028 | 12/07/17 | 700 700 |
| 4.000% due February 1, 2029 | 10/31/18 | 600 — |
| Floating-rate Senior Notes: | | |
| Three-month LIBOR + 0.32% due May 21, 2021 | 05/22/18 | 600 — |
| Total Senior Notes | | 6,881 4,731 |
| 5.450% Finance lease obligation ⁽³⁾ | 06/04/04 | 52 61 |
| Unamortized discount — net | | (15) (14) |
| Debt issuance costs | | (40) (25) |
| Total long-term debt | | \$6,878 \$4,753 |

⁽¹⁾ Redeemed on February 8, 2018.

⁽²⁾ Redeemed on June 25, 2018.

⁽³⁾ Schwab has a finance lease obligation related to an office building and land under a 20-year lease. The remaining finance lease obligation is being reduced by a portion of the lease payments over the remaining lease term through June 30, 2024.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Annual maturities on long-term debt outstanding at December 31, 2018, are as follows:

| | Maturities |
|----------------------------|------------|
| 2019 | \$ 8 |
| 2020 | 709 |
| 2021 | 1,209 |
| 2022 | 266 |
| 2023 | 810 |
| Thereafter | 3,931 |
| Total maturities | 6,933 |
| Unamortized discount — net | (15) |
| Debt issuance costs | (40) |
| Total long-term debt | \$ 6,878 |

Short-term borrowings: Certain banking subsidiaries maintain secured credit facilities with the FHLB. Amounts available under these facilities are dependent on the amount of our First Mortgages, HELOCs, and the fair value of certain of their investment securities that are pledged as collateral. As of December 31, 2018, the collateral pledged provided a total borrowing capacity of \$35.5 billion of which no amounts were outstanding. As of December 31, 2017, the collateral pledged provided a total borrowing capacity of \$32.3 billion of which \$15.0 billion was outstanding, with a 1.53% weighted average fixed interest rate. The Company could increase its borrowing capacity by pledging additional securities.

As a condition of the FHLB borrowings, we are required to hold FHLB stock, with the investment recorded in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets. The investment in FHLB was \$32 million and \$405 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

14. Commitments and Contingencies

Loan Portfolio: CSB provides a co-branded loan origination program for CSB clients (the Program) with Quicken Loans, Inc. (Quicken Loans®). Pursuant to the Program, Quicken Loans originates and services First Mortgages and HELOCs for CSB clients. Under the Program, CSB purchases certain First Mortgages and HELOCs that are originated by Quicken Loans. CSB purchased First Mortgages of \$2.1 billion and \$2.8 billion during 2018 and 2017, respectively. CSB purchased HELOCs with commitments of \$395 million and \$461 million during 2018 and 2017, respectively.

The Company's commitments to extend credit on bank lines of credit and to purchase First Mortgages are as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Commitments to extend credit related to unused HELOCs, PALs, and other lines of credit | \$ 11,046 | \$ 10,060 |
| Commitments to purchase First Mortgage loans | 268 | 308 |
| Total | \$ 11,314 | \$ 10,368 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Operating leases: Schwab has non-cancelable operating leases for office space and equipment. As of December 31, 2018, future annual minimum rental commitments under these leases, net of contractual subleases are as follows:

| | Operating Leases | Subleases | Net |
|------------|---------------------|-----------|-------|
| 2019 | \$ 131 | \$ 4 | \$127 |
| 2020 | 125 | 4 | 121 |
| 2021 | 101 | 4 | 97 |
| 2022 | 79 | 2 | 77 |
| 2023 | 72 | 1 | 71 |
| Thereafter | 282 | — | 282 |
| Total | \$ 790 | \$ 15 | \$775 |

Certain leases contain provisions for renewal options, purchase options, and rent escalations based on increases in certain costs incurred by the lessor. Rent expense relating to operating leases was \$146 million, \$136 million, and \$123 million in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

Purchase obligations: Schwab has purchase obligations for services such as advertising and marketing, telecommunications, professional services, and hardware- and software-related agreements. As of December 31, 2018, the Company has purchase obligations as follows:

| | |
|------------|---------|
| 2019 | \$475 |
| 2020 | 232 |
| 2021 | 71 |
| 2022 | 32 |
| 2023 | 22 |
| Thereafter | 170 |
| Total | \$1,002 |

Guarantees and indemnifications: Schwab has clients that sell (i.e., write) listed option contracts that are cleared by the Options Clearing Corporation – a clearing house that establishes margin requirements on these transactions. We partially satisfy the margin requirements by arranging unsecured standby LOCs, in favor of the Options Clearing Corporation, which are issued by several banks. At December 31, 2018, the aggregate face amount of these LOCs totaled \$225 million. There were no funds drawn under any of these LOCs at December 31, 2018. In connection with its securities lending activities, Schwab is required to provide collateral to certain brokerage clients. The Company satisfies the collateral requirements by providing cash as collateral.

Schwab also provides guarantees to securities clearing houses and exchanges under standard membership agreements, which require members to guarantee the performance of other members. Under the agreements, if another member becomes unable to satisfy its obligations to the clearing houses and exchanges, other members would be required to meet shortfalls. Schwab's liability under these arrangements is not quantifiable and may exceed the cash and securities it has posted as collateral. The potential requirement for the Company to make payments under these arrangements is remote. Accordingly, no liability has been recognized for these guarantees.

Legal contingencies: Schwab is subject to claims and lawsuits in the ordinary course of business, including arbitrations, class actions and other litigation, some of which include claims for substantial or unspecified damages. The Company is also the subject of inquiries, investigations, and proceedings by regulatory and other governmental

agencies.

Predicting the outcome of a litigation or regulatory matter is inherently difficult, requiring significant judgment and evaluation of various factors, including the procedural status of the matter and any recent developments; prior experience and the experience of others in similar cases; available defenses, including potential opportunities to dispose of a case on the merits or procedural grounds before trial (e.g., motions to dismiss or for summary judgment); the progress of fact discovery; the opinions of counsel and experts regarding potential damages; and potential opportunities for settlement and the status of

- 83 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

any settlement discussions. It may not be reasonably possible to estimate a range of potential liability until the matter is closer to resolution – pending, for example, further proceedings, the outcome of key motions or appeals, or discussions among the parties. Numerous issues may have to be developed, such as discovery of important factual matters and determination of threshold legal issues, which may include novel or unsettled questions of law. Reserves are established or adjusted or further disclosure and estimates of potential loss are provided as the matter progresses and more information becomes available.

Schwab believes it has strong defenses in all significant matters currently pending and is contesting liability and any damages claimed. Nevertheless, some of these matters may result in adverse judgments or awards, including penalties, injunctions or other relief, and the Company may also determine to settle a matter because of the uncertainty and risks of litigation. Described below are certain matters in which there is a reasonable possibility that a material loss could be incurred or where the matter may otherwise be of significant interest to stockholders. Unless otherwise noted, the Company is unable to provide a reasonable estimate of any potential liability given the stage of proceedings in the matter. With respect to all other pending matters, based on current information and consultation with counsel, it does not appear reasonably possible that the outcome of any such matter would be material to the financial condition, operating results, or cash flows of the Company.

Crago Order Routing Litigation: On July 13, 2016, a securities class action lawsuit was filed in the U.S. District Court for the Northern District of California on behalf of a putative class of customers executing equity orders through CS&Co. The lawsuit names CS&Co and CSC as defendants and alleges that an agreement under which CS&Co routed orders to UBS Securities LLC between July 13, 2011 and December 31, 2014 violated CS&Co's duty to seek best execution. Plaintiffs seek unspecified damages, interest, injunctive and equitable relief, and attorneys' fees and costs. After a first amended complaint was dismissed with leave to amend, plaintiffs filed a second amended complaint on August 14, 2017. Defendants again moved to dismiss, and in a decision issued December 5, 2017, the court denied the motion. Defendants have answered the complaint to deny all allegations, and intend to vigorously contest the lawsuit.

Total Bond Market Fund™ Litigation: As disclosed previously, the Company had been responding to a class action lawsuit in the U.S. District Court for the Northern District of California on behalf of investors in the Schwab Total Bond Market Fund. On December 13, 2018, following dismissal of its fourth amended complaint and unsuccessful appeals to the Ninth Circuit Court of Appeals, plaintiff stipulated and agreed to dismissal of all claims, concluding the case.

15. Financial Instruments Subject to Off-Balance Sheet Credit Risk

Off-Balance Sheet Credit Risk

Resale agreements: Schwab enters into collateralized resale agreements principally with other broker-dealers, which could result in losses in the event the counterparty fails to purchase the securities held as collateral for the cash advanced and the fair value of the securities declines. To mitigate this risk, Schwab requires that the counterparty deliver securities to a custodian, to be held as collateral, with a fair value at or in excess of the resale price. Schwab also sets standards for the credit quality of the counterparty, monitors the fair value of the underlying securities as compared to the related receivable, including accrued interest, and requires additional collateral where deemed appropriate. The collateral provided under these resale agreements is utilized to meet obligations under broker-dealer

client protection rules, which place limitations on our ability to access such segregated securities. For Schwab to repledge or sell this collateral, it would be required to deposit cash and/or securities of an equal amount into its segregated reserve bank accounts in order to meet its segregated cash and investment requirement. Schwab's resale agreements are not subject to master netting arrangements.

Securities lending: Schwab loans brokerage client securities temporarily to other brokers and clearing houses in connection with its securities lending activities and receives cash as collateral for the securities loaned. Increases in security prices may cause the fair value of the securities loaned to exceed the amount of cash received as collateral. In the event the counterparty to these transactions does not return the loaned securities or provide additional cash collateral, we may be exposed to the risk of acquiring the securities at prevailing market prices in order to satisfy our client obligations. Schwab mitigates this risk by requiring credit approvals for counterparties, monitoring the fair value of securities loaned, and requiring additional cash as collateral when necessary. We also borrow securities from other broker-dealers to fulfill short sales by brokerage clients and deliver cash to the lender in exchange for the securities. The fair value of these borrowed securities was \$99 million and \$215 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. All of our securities lending transactions are

- 84 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

through a program with a clearing organization, which guarantees the return of cash to us and is subject to enforceable master netting arrangements with other broker-dealers; however, we do not net securities lending transactions. Therefore, the securities loaned and securities borrowed are presented gross in the consolidated balance sheets.

The following table presents information about our resale agreements and securities lending activity depicting the potential effect of rights of setoff between these recognized assets and recognized liabilities at December 31, 2018 and 2017.

| | Gross Assets/ Liabilities | Gross Amounts Offset in the Consolidated Balance Sheets | Net Amounts Presented in the Consolidated Balance Sheets | Counterparty Offsetting | Collateral | Net Amount |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|---|---|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| December 31, 2018 | | | | | | |
| Assets | | | | | | |
| Resale agreements ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 7,195 | \$ — | —\$ 7,195 | \$— | \$(7,195) ⁽²⁾ | \$ — |
| Securities borrowed ⁽³⁾ | 101 | — | 101 | (98) | (3) | — |
| Total | \$ 7,296 | \$ — | —\$ 7,296 | \$(98) | \$(7,198) | \$ — |
| Liabilities | | | | | | |
| Securities loaned ^(4,5) | \$ 1,184 | \$ — | —\$ 1,184 | \$(98) | \$(975) | \$ 111 |
| Total | \$ 1,184 | \$ — | —\$ 1,184 | \$(98) | \$(975) | \$ 111 |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | | |
| Assets | | | | | | |
| Resale agreements ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 6,596 | \$ — | —\$ 6,596 | \$— | \$(6,596) ⁽²⁾ | \$ — |
| Securities borrowed ⁽³⁾ | 222 | — | 222 | (199) | (22) | 1 |
| Total | \$ 6,818 | \$ — | —\$ 6,818 | \$(199) | \$(6,618) | \$ 1 |
| Liabilities | | | | | | |
| Securities loaned ^(4,5) | \$ 966 | \$ — | —\$ 966 | \$(199) | \$(670) | \$ 97 |
| Total | \$ 966 | \$ — | —\$ 966 | \$(199) | \$(670) | \$ 97 |

⁽¹⁾ Included in cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes in the consolidated balance sheets.

⁽²⁾ Actual collateral was greater than or equal to 102% of the related assets. At December 31, 2018 and 2017, the fair value of collateral received in connection with resale agreements that are available to be repledged or sold was \$7.4 billion and \$6.7 billion, respectively.

⁽³⁾ Included in receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations in the consolidated balance sheets.

⁽⁴⁾ Included in payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations in the consolidated balance sheets. The cash collateral received from counterparties under securities lending transactions was equal to or greater than the market value of the securities loaned at December 31, 2018 and 2017.

⁽⁵⁾ Securities loaned are predominantly comprised of equity securities held in client brokerage accounts with overnight and continuous remaining contractual maturities.

Client trade settlement: Schwab is obligated to settle transactions with brokers and other financial institutions even if our clients fail to meet their obligations to us. Clients are required to complete their transactions on settlement date, generally two business days after the trade date. If clients do not fulfill their contractual obligations, we may incur losses. We have established procedures to reduce this risk by requiring deposits from clients in excess of amounts prescribed by regulatory requirements for certain types of trades, and therefore the potential to make payments under these client transactions is remote. Accordingly, no liability has been recognized for these transactions.

- 85 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Margin lending: Clients with margin loans have agreed to allow Schwab to pledge collateralized securities in their brokerage accounts in accordance with federal regulations. The following table summarizes the fair value of client securities that were available, under such regulations, that could have been used as collateral, and the amounts that we had pledged:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|----------|----------|
| Fair value of client securities available to be pledged | \$26,628 | \$25,905 |
| Fair value of client securities pledged for: | | |
| Fulfillment of requirements with the Options Clearing Corporation ⁽¹⁾ | 2,315 | 2,280 |
| Fulfillment of client short sales | 1,292 | 2,011 |
| Securities lending to other broker-dealers | 974 | 784 |
| Total collateral pledged | \$4,581 | \$5,075 |

Note: Excludes amounts available and pledged for securities lending from fully-paid client securities. The fair value of fully-paid client securities available and pledged was \$97 million as of December 31, 2018 and \$78 million as of December 31, 2017.

(1) Client securities pledged to fulfill client margin requirements for open option contracts established with the Options Clearing Corporation.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

16. Fair Values of Assets and Liabilities

For a description of the fair value hierarchy and Schwab's fair value methodologies, including the use of independent third-party pricing services, see Note 2. The Company did not adjust prices received from the primary independent third-party pricing service at December 31, 2018 or 2017.

Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Recurring Basis

The following tables present the fair value hierarchy for assets measured at fair value on a recurring basis. Liabilities recorded at fair value were not material, and therefore are not included in the following tables:

| December 31, 2018 | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Balance at Fair Value |
|---|------------|----------|---------|--------------------------|
| Cash equivalents: | | | | |
| Money market funds | \$3,429 | \$— | \$— | \$—3,429 |
| Commercial paper | — | 4,863 | — | 4,863 |
| Total cash equivalents | 3,429 | 4,863 | — | 8,292 |
| Investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes: | | | | |
| Certificates of deposit | — | 1,396 | — | 1,396 |
| U.S. Government securities | — | 3,275 | — | 3,275 |
| Total investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | — | 4,671 | — | 4,671 |
| Other securities owned: | | | | |
| Equity and bond mutual funds | 441 | — | — | 441 |
| State and municipal debt obligations | — | 39 | — | 39 |
| Equity, U.S. Government and corporate debt, and other securities | 3 | 30 | — | 33 |
| Schwab Funds® money market funds | 26 | — | — | 26 |
| Total other securities owned | 470 | 69 | — | 539 |
| Available for sale securities: | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | — | 25,556 | — | 25,556 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | — | 18,302 | — | 18,302 |
| Asset-backed securities | — | 10,085 | — | 10,085 |
| Corporate debt securities | — | 7,467 | — | 7,467 |
| Certificates of deposit | — | 3,685 | — | 3,685 |
| U.S. agency notes | — | 898 | — | 898 |
| Commercial paper | — | 522 | — | 522 |
| Foreign government agency securities | — | 49 | — | 49 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | — | 14 | — | 14 |
| Total available for sale securities | — | 66,578 | — | 66,578 |
| Total | \$3,899 | \$76,181 | \$— | —\$80,080 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| December 31, 2017 | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Balance at Fair Value |
|---|------------|----------|------------|--------------------------|
| Cash equivalents: | | | | |
| Money market funds | \$2,727 | \$— | \$ | -\$2,727 |
| Total cash equivalents | 2,727 | — | — | 2,727 |
| Investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes: | | | | |
| Certificates of deposit | — | 2,198 | — | 2,198 |
| U.S. Government securities | — | 3,658 | — | 3,658 |
| Total investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | — | 5,856 | — | 5,856 |
| Other securities owned: | | | | |
| Equity and bond mutual funds | 318 | — | — | 318 |
| Schwab Funds [®] money market funds | 135 | — | — | 135 |
| State and municipal debt obligations | — | 52 | — | 52 |
| Equity, U.S. Government and corporate debt, and other securities | 2 | 32 | — | 34 |
| Total other securities owned | 455 | 84 | — | 539 |
| Available for sale securities: | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | — | 20,929 | — | 20,929 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | — | 9,500 | — | 9,500 |
| Asset-backed securities | — | 9,047 | — | 9,047 |
| Corporate debt securities | — | 6,169 | — | 6,169 |
| Certificates of deposit | — | 2,041 | — | 2,041 |
| U.S. agency notes | — | 1,906 | — | 1,906 |
| Commercial paper | — | 313 | — | 313 |
| Foreign government mortgage-backed securities | — | 50 | — | 50 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | — | 40 | — | 40 |
| Total available for sale securities | — | 49,995 | — | 49,995 |
| Total | \$3,182 | \$55,935 | \$ | -\$59,117 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Fair Value of Other Financial Instruments

The following tables present the fair value hierarchy for other financial instruments:

| December 31, 2018 | Carrying Amount | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Balance at Fair Value |
|--|-----------------|---------|------------|---------|-----------------------|
| Assets | | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$19,646 | \$ | -\$19,646 | \$ | -\$19,646 |
| Cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | 8,886 | — | 8,886 | — | 8,886 |
| Receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 553 | — | 553 | — | 553 |
| Receivables from brokerage clients — net | 21,641 | — | 21,641 | — | 21,641 |
| Held to maturity securities: | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | 118,064 | — | 116,093 | — | 116,093 |
| Asset-backed securities | 18,502 | — | 18,546 | — | 18,546 |
| Corporate debt securities | 4,477 | — | 4,432 | — | 4,432 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 1,327 | — | 1,348 | — | 1,348 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 1,156 | — | 1,142 | — | 1,142 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 223 | — | 217 | — | 217 |
| Certificates of deposit | 200 | — | 201 | — | 201 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | — | 49 | — | 49 |
| Other | 10 | — | 10 | — | 10 |
| Total held to maturity securities | 144,009 | — | 142,038 | — | 142,038 |
| Bank loans — net: | | | | | |
| First Mortgages | 10,370 | — | 10,193 | — | 10,193 |
| HELOCs | 1,500 | — | 1,583 | — | 1,583 |
| Pledged asset lines | 4,561 | — | 4,561 | — | 4,561 |
| Other | 178 | — | 178 | — | 178 |
| Total bank loans — net | 16,609 | — | 16,515 | — | 16,515 |
| Other assets | 460 | — | 460 | — | 460 |
| Total | \$211,804 | \$ | -\$209,739 | \$ | -\$209,739 |
| Liabilities | | | | | |
| Bank deposits | \$231,423 | \$ | -\$231,423 | \$ | -\$231,423 |
| Payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 1,831 | — | 1,831 | — | 1,831 |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 32,726 | — | 32,726 | — | 32,726 |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | 1,370 | — | 1,370 | — | 1,370 |
| Long-term debt | 6,878 | — | 6,827 | — | 6,827 |
| Total | \$274,228 | \$ | -\$274,177 | \$ | -\$274,177 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| December 31, 2017 | Carrying Amount | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Balance at Fair Value |
|--|-----------------|---------|------------|---------|-----------------------|
| Assets | | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$ 11,490 | \$ — | \$ 11,490 | \$ — | \$ 11,490 |
| Cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes | 9,277 | — | 9,277 | — | 9,277 |
| Receivables from brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 649 | — | 649 | — | 649 |
| Receivables from brokerage clients — net | 20,568 | — | 20,568 | — | 20,568 |
| Held to maturity securities: | | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | 101,197 | — | 100,453 | — | 100,453 |
| Asset-backed securities | 12,937 | — | 13,062 | — | 13,062 |
| Corporate debt securities | 4,078 | — | 4,086 | — | 4,086 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 1,247 | — | 1,304 | — | 1,304 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 994 | — | 999 | — | 999 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 223 | — | 220 | — | 220 |
| Certificates of deposit | 200 | — | 200 | — | 200 |
| Foreign government agency securities | 50 | — | 49 | — | 49 |
| Total held to maturity securities | 120,926 | — | 120,373 | — | 120,373 |
| Bank loans — net: | | | | | |
| First Mortgages | 10,000 | — | 9,917 | — | 9,917 |
| HELOCs | 1,935 | — | 2,025 | — | 2,025 |
| Pledged asset lines | 4,369 | — | 4,369 | — | 4,369 |
| Other | 174 | — | 174 | — | 174 |
| Total bank loans — net | 16,478 | — | 16,485 | — | 16,485 |
| Other assets | 781 | — | 781 | — | 781 |
| Total | \$ 180,169 | \$ — | \$ 179,623 | \$ — | \$ 179,623 |
| Liabilities | | | | | |
| Bank deposits | \$ 169,656 | \$ — | \$ 169,656 | \$ — | \$ 169,656 |
| Payables to brokers, dealers, and clearing organizations | 1,287 | — | 1,287 | — | 1,287 |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 31,243 | — | 31,243 | — | 31,243 |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | 1,463 | — | 1,463 | — | 1,463 |
| Short-term borrowings | 15,000 | — | 15,000 | — | 15,000 |
| Long-term debt | 4,753 | — | 4,811 | — | 4,811 |
| Total | \$ 223,402 | \$ — | \$ 223,460 | \$ — | \$ 223,460 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

17. Stockholders' Equity

CSC did not issue any shares of common stock through external offerings during 2018, 2017, or 2016.

On October 25, 2018, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors terminated the existing two share repurchase authorizations and replaced them with a new authorization to repurchase up to \$1.0 billion of common stock. CSC repurchased 22 million shares for \$1.0 billion in 2018, completing all repurchases under this authorization. There were no repurchases of CSC's common stock in 2018 prior to the fourth quarter, or in 2017.

CSC was authorized to issue 9,940,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.01 par value, at December 31, 2018 and 2017. The following is a summary of CSC's non-cumulative perpetual preferred stock outstanding as of such dates:

| | Shares Issued and Outstanding (In thousands) at December 31, | | Liquidation Preference Per Share | Carrying Value at December 31, | | Dividend Rate in Effect at December 31, 2018 | Earliest Redemption Date | Date at Which Dividend Rate Becomes Floating | Floating Annual Rate of Three-month LIBOR plus: |
|-------------------------|--|-------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|--|--------------------------|--|---|
| | 2018 (1) | 2017 (1) | | 2018 | 2017 | | | | |
| Fixed-rate: | | | | | | | | | |
| Series C | 600 | 600 | \$ 1,000 | \$585 | \$585 | 08/03/15 6.000 % | 12/01/20 | N/A | N/A |
| Series D | 750 | 750 | 1,000 | 728 | 728 | 03/07/16 5.950 % | 06/01/21 | N/A | N/A |
| Fixed-to-floating-rate: | | | | | | | | | |
| Series A | 400 | 400 | 1,000 | 397 | 397 | 01/26/12 7.000 % | 02/01/22 | 02/01/22 | 4.820 % |
| Series E | 6 | 6 | 100,000 | 591 | 591 | 10/31/16 4.625 % | 03/01/22 | 03/01/22 | 3.315 % |
| Series F | 5 | 5 | 100,000 | 492 | 492 | 10/31/17 5.000 % | 12/01/27 | 12/01/27 | 2.575 % |
| Total Preferred Stock | 1,761 | 1,761 | | \$2,793 | \$2,793 | | | | |

(1) Represented by depositary shares, except for Series A.

N/A Not applicable.

Dividends on CSC's preferred stock are not cumulative and will only be paid on a series of preferred stock for a dividend period if declared by CSC's Board of Directors. Under the terms of each series of preferred stock, CSC's ability to pay dividends on, make distributions with respect to, or to repurchase, redeem or acquire its common stock or any preferred stock ranking on parity with or junior to the series of preferred stock, is subject to restrictions in the event that CSC does not declare and either pay or set aside a sum sufficient for payment of dividends on the series of preferred stock for the immediately preceding dividend period.

Dividends on fixed-rate preferred stock are payable quarterly. Dividends on fixed-to-floating-rate preferred stock are payable semiannually while at a fixed rate, and will become payable quarterly after converting to a floating rate.

Redemption Rights

Each series of CSC's stock may be redeemed at CSC's option on any dividend payment date on or after the earliest redemption date for that series. All outstanding preferred stock series may also be redeemed following a "capital treatment event," as described in the terms of each series set forth in the relevant certificate of designations. Any redemption of CSC's preferred stock is subject to approval from the Federal Reserve.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

18. Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income

AOCI represents cumulative gains and losses that are not reflected in earnings. The components of other comprehensive income (loss) are as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | |
|--|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| | Before Tax tax | Net of tax | Before Tax tax | Net of tax | Before Tax tax | Net of tax |
| Change in net unrealized gain (loss) on available for sale securities: | | | | | | |
| Net unrealized gain (loss) | \$(123) | \$30 | \$(93) | \$13 | \$(7) | \$6 |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss on securities transferred to held to maturity ⁽¹⁾ | — | — | — | 227 | (85) | 142 |
| Other reclassifications included in other revenue | — | — | — | (12) | 4 | (8) |
| Change in net unrealized gain (loss) on held to maturity securities: | | | | | | |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss on securities transferred from available for sale ⁽¹⁾ | — | — | — | (227) | 85 | (142) |
| Amortization of amounts previously recorded upon transfer from available for sale | 35 | (8) | 27 | 31 | (11) | 20 |
| Other | (1) | — | (1) | (11) | 4 | (7) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) | \$(89) | \$22 | \$(67) | \$21 | \$(10) | \$11 |

⁽¹⁾ See Note 6 for discussion of the transfer of securities from the AFS category to the HTM category during the first quarter of 2017.

AOCI balances are as follows:

| | Total AOCI |
|---|---------------|
| Balance at December 31, 2015 | \$(134) |
| Net unrealized gain (loss) on available for sale securities | (30) |
| Other changes | 1 |
| Balance at December 31, 2016 | \$(163) |
| Available for sale securities: | |
| Net unrealized gain (loss) | 6 |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss on securities transferred to held to maturity | 142 |
| Other reclassifications included in other revenue | (8) |
| Held to maturity securities: | |
| Reclassification of net unrealized loss on securities transferred from available for sale | (142) |
| Amortization of amounts previously recorded upon transfer to held to maturity from available for sale | 20 |
| Other | (7) |
| Balance at December 31, 2017 | \$(152) |
| Adoption of accounting standards (Note 2) | (33) |
| Available for sale securities: | |
| Net unrealized gain (loss) | (93) |
| Held to maturity securities: | |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | |
|---|---------|
| Amortization of amounts previously recorded upon transfer to held to maturity from available for sale | 27 |
| Other | (1) |
| Balance at December 31, 2018 | \$(252) |

- 92 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

19. Employee Incentive, Retirement, Deferred Compensation, and Career Achievement Plans

Schwab's share-based incentive plans provide for granting options and restricted stock units to employees, officers, and directors. In addition, we offer retirement and employee stock purchase plans to eligible employees and sponsor deferred compensation plans for eligible officers and non-employee directors.

A summary of share-based compensation expense and related income tax benefit is as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|---|--------|--------|--------|
| Stock option expense | \$51 | \$50 | \$45 |
| Restricted stock unit expense ⁽¹⁾ | 136 | 94 | 89 |
| Employee stock purchase plan expense | 10 | 9 | 7 |
| Total share-based compensation expense | \$197 | \$153 | \$141 |
| Income tax benefit on share-based compensation expense ⁽²⁾ | \$(47) | \$(57) | \$(53) |

⁽¹⁾ Restricted stock unit expense in 2018 includes \$36 million related to special stock awards issued to non-officer employees.

⁽²⁾ Excludes income tax benefits due to the adoption of ASU 2016-09 of \$46 million and \$87 million in 2018 and 2017, respectively.

The Company issues shares for stock options and restricted stock units from treasury stock. At December 31, 2018, the Company was authorized to grant up to 68 million common shares under its existing stock incentive plans. Additionally, at December 31, 2018, the Company had 36 million shares reserved for future issuance under its employee stock purchase plan.

As of December 31, 2018, there was \$294 million of total unrecognized compensation cost related to outstanding stock options and restricted stock units, which is expected to be recognized through 2022 with a remaining weighted-average service period of 1.8 years for stock options, 2.4 years for restricted stock units, and 0.3 years for performance stock units.

Stock Option Plan

Options are granted for the purchase of shares of common stock at an exercise price not less than market value on the date of grant, and expire ten years from the date of grant. Options generally vest annually over a one- to four-year period from the date of grant.

Stock option activity is summarized below:

| | Number of Options (In millions) | Weighted-Average Exercise Price per Share | Weighted- Average Contractual Life (in years) | Average Remaining | Aggregate Intrinsic Value |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|---|-------------------|---------------------------|
| Outstanding at December 31, 2017 | 32 | \$ 26.16 | 6.38 | | \$ 814 |
| Granted | 4 | 47.98 | | | |
| Exercised | (6) | 21.65 | | | |
| Forfeited ⁽¹⁾ | — | 36.05 | | | |
| Expired ⁽¹⁾ | — | 19.05 | | | |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | |
|--|----|----------|------|--------|
| Outstanding at December 31, 2018 | 30 | \$ 30.19 | 6.27 | \$ 373 |
| Vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2018 | 30 | \$ 30.05 | 6.24 | \$ 373 |
| Vested and exercisable at December 31, 2018 | 19 | \$ 23.70 | 4.86 | \$ 331 |

(1) Number of options were less than 500 thousand.

The aggregate intrinsic value in the table above represents the difference between CSC's closing stock price and the exercise price of each in-the-money option on the last trading day of the period presented.

- 93 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Information on stock options granted and exercised is presented below:

| | | | |
|--|----------|----------|---------|
| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Weighted-average fair value of options granted per share | \$ 14.16 | \$ 13.04 | \$ 8.73 |
| Cash received from options exercised | 125 | 171 | 144 |
| Tax benefit realized on options exercised | 35 | 70 | 38 |
| Aggregate intrinsic value of options exercised | 189 | 241 | 149 |

We use an option pricing model to estimate the fair value of options granted. The model takes into account the contractual term of the stock option, expected volatility, dividend yield, and the risk-free interest rate. Expected volatility is based on the implied volatility of publicly-traded options on CSC's stock. Dividend yield is based on the average historical CSC dividend yield. The risk-free interest rate is based on the yield of a U.S. Treasury zero-coupon issue with a remaining term similar to the contractual term of the option. We use historical option exercise data, which includes employee termination data, to estimate the probability of future option exercises. The assumptions used to value the options granted during the years presented and their expected lives were as follows:

| | | | |
|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Weighted-average expected dividend yield | 1.42 | % 1.06 | % 1.22 |
| Weighted-average expected volatility | 33 | % 34 | % 30 |
| Weighted-average risk-free interest rate | 3.0 | % 2.1 | % 1.8 |
| Expected life (in years) | 4.0 - 5.2 | 4.1 - 5.3 | 4.7 - 7.3 |

Restricted Stock Units

Restricted stock units are awards that entitle the holder to receive shares of CSC's common stock following a vesting period. Restricted stock units are restricted from transfer or sale and generally vest annually over a one- to four-year period, while performance-based restricted stock units also require the Company achieve certain financial or other measures prior to vesting. The fair value of restricted stock units is based on the market price of the Company's stock on the date of grant. The grant date fair value is amortized to compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period. The fair value of the restricted stock units that vested during each of the years 2018, 2017, and 2016 was \$166 million, \$127 million, and \$105 million, respectively.

The Company's restricted stock units activity is summarized below:

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| | Number | Weighted- |
| | of Units | Average Grant |
| | (In | Date Fair Value |
| | millions) | per Unit |
| Outstanding at December 31, 2017 | 7 | \$ 35.16 |
| Granted ⁽¹⁾ | 3 | 47.03 |
| Vested ⁽¹⁾ | (3) | 35.95 |
| Forfeited ⁽²⁾ | — | 36.10 |
| Outstanding at December 31, 2018 | 7 | \$ 40.64 |

⁽¹⁾ Includes 781 thousand units related to special non-officer employee stock awards, with a weighted-average grant date fair value of \$45.87. All units granted vested immediately.

⁽²⁾ Number of units were less than 500 thousand.

Retirement Plan

Employees can participate in Schwab's qualified retirement plan, the SchwabPlan® Retirement Savings and Investment Plan. The Company may match certain employee contributions or make additional contributions to this plan at its discretion. The Company's total expense was \$105 million, \$92 million, and \$83 million in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

- 94 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Deferred Compensation Plans

Schwab's deferred compensation plan for officers permits participants to defer the receipt of certain cash compensation. The deferred compensation plan for non-employee directors permits participants to defer receipt of all or a portion of their director fees and to receive either a grant of stock options, or upon ceasing service as a director, the number of shares of CSC's common stock that would have resulted from investing the deferred fee amount into CSC's common stock. The deferred compensation liability was \$144 million and \$160 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

FC Career Achievement Plan

The FC career achievement plan is a noncontributory, unfunded, nonqualified plan for eligible FCs. An FC is eligible for earned cash payments after retirement contingent upon meeting certain performance levels, tenure, age, and client transitioning requirements. Allocations to the plan are calculated annually based on performance levels achieved and eligible compensation and are subject to general creditors of the Company. Full vesting occurs when an FC reaches 60 years of age and has at least ten years of service with the Company.

The following table presents the changes in projected benefit obligation:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|-------|-------|
| Projected benefit obligation at beginning of year | \$ 44 | \$ 26 |
| Benefit cost ⁽¹⁾ | 11 | 9 |
| Actuarial (gain)/loss ⁽²⁾ | 1 | 9 |
| Projected benefit obligation at end of year ⁽³⁾ | \$ 56 | \$ 44 |

⁽¹⁾ Includes service cost and interest cost, which are recognized in compensation and benefits expense and other expense, respectively, in the consolidated statements of income.

⁽²⁾ Actuarial (gain)/loss is reflected in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income and is included in AOCI on the consolidated balance sheets.

⁽³⁾ This amount is recognized as a liability on the consolidated balance sheets and also depicts the accumulated benefit obligation.

20. Taxes on Income

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Act was signed into law. Among other things, the Tax Act lowered the federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, effective for tax years including or commencing January 1, 2018. Schwab's effective tax rate for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016 was 23.1%, 35.5%, and 36.9%, respectively, resulting from the impact of the Tax Act of 2017.

Also as a result of the Tax Act, Schwab recognized a \$46 million one-time non-cash charge to taxes on income in the fourth quarter of 2017 associated with the remeasurement of net deferred tax assets and other tax adjustments related to the Tax Act. During 2018, we concluded our analysis and accounting for all remaining impacts of the Tax Act, including the state tax effect of adjustments made to federal temporary differences, resulting in no additional material impacts.

As of January 1, 2018, Schwab adopted new accounting guidance that decreased AOCI and increased retained earnings by \$33 million for the reclassification of certain impacts of the Tax Act as described in Note 2. Schwab also adopted new revenue recognition guidance as of January 1, 2018, which resulted in recording an asset for capitalized contract costs of \$219 million and a related deferred tax liability of \$52 million as described in Note 2. As of December 31, 2018, the deferred tax liability related to the capitalized contract costs was \$60 million.

- 95 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

The components of taxes on income are as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|-------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Current: | | | |
| Federal | \$847 | \$1,132 | \$980 |
| State | 159 | 106 | 109 |
| Total current | 1,006 | 1,238 | 1,089 |
| Deferred: | | | |
| Federal | 42 | 58 | 13 |
| State | 7 | — | 2 |
| Total deferred | 49 | 58 | 15 |
| Taxes on income | \$1,055 | \$1,296 | \$1,104 |

The temporary differences that created deferred tax assets and liabilities are detailed below:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|--------|--------|
| Deferred tax assets: | | |
| Employee compensation, severance, and benefits | \$132 | \$133 |
| Net unrealized loss on available for sale securities | 79 | 57 |
| Reserves and allowances | 13 | 15 |
| Facilities lease commitments | 12 | 14 |
| State and local taxes | 21 | 12 |
| Net operating loss carryforwards | 5 | 5 |
| Other | 6 | 3 |
| Total deferred tax assets | 268 | 239 |
| Valuation allowance | (3) | (2) |
| Deferred tax assets — net of valuation allowance | 265 | 237 |
| Deferred tax liabilities: | | |
| Capitalized internal-use software development costs | (98) | (89) |
| Depreciation and amortization | (108) | (72) |
| Capitalized contract costs | (60) | — |
| Total deferred tax liabilities | (266) | (161) |
| Deferred tax asset/(liability) — net | \$(1) | \$76 |

(1) Amounts are included in accrued expenses and other liabilities and in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets at December 31, 2018 and in other assets at December 31, 2017.

A reconciliation of the federal statutory income tax rate to the effective income tax rate is as follows:

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|--|--------|--------|--------|
| Federal statutory income tax rate | 21.0 % | 35.0 % | 35.0 % |
| State income taxes, net of federal tax benefit | 3.0 | 2.2 | 2.4 |
| Equity compensation benefit | (1.0) | (2.4) | — |
| Other ⁽¹⁾ | 0.1 | 0.7 | (0.5) |
| Effective income tax rate | 23.1 % | 35.5 % | 36.9 % |

(1) 2017 includes the impact of one-time charge to taxes on income associated with the Tax Act.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

A reconciliation of the beginning and ending amount of unrecognized tax benefits is as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|---|-------|-------|
| Balance at beginning of year | \$111 | \$93 |
| Additions for tax positions related to the current year | 3 | 22 |
| Additions for tax positions related to prior years | 3 | 15 |
| Reductions for tax positions related to prior years | (4) | (2) |
| Reductions due to lapse of statute of limitations | — | — |
| Reductions for settlements with tax authorities | (1) | (17) |
| Balance at end of year | \$112 | \$111 |

Unrecognized tax benefits totaled \$112 million and \$111 million as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, \$108 million and \$104 million of which if recognized, would affect the annual effective tax rate.

Interest and penalties were accrued related to unrecognized tax benefits in tax expense. At December 31, 2018 and 2017, we had accrued approximately \$9 million and \$5 million, respectively, for the payment of interest and penalties.

The Company and its subsidiaries are subject to routine examinations by the respective federal, state and applicable local jurisdictions' taxing authorities. Federal returns for 2011 through 2017 remain subject to examination. The years open to examination by state and local governments vary by jurisdiction.

21. Regulatory Requirements

CSC is a savings and loan holding company and CSB, CSC's primary depository institution subsidiary, is a federal savings bank. CSC is subject to examination, supervision, and regulation by the Federal Reserve. CSB is subject to examination, supervision, and regulation by the OCC, as its primary regulator, the FDIC as its deposit insurer, and the CFPB. CSC is required to serve as a source of strength for CSB.

CSB is subject to various requirements and restrictions under federal and state laws, including regulatory capital requirements and requirements that restrict and govern the terms of affiliate transactions, such as extensions of credit to, or asset purchases from CSC or its other subsidiaries by CSB. In addition, CSB is required to provide notice to and may be required to obtain approval of the OCC and the Federal Reserve to declare dividends to CSC. The federal banking agencies have broad powers to enforce these regulations, including the power to terminate deposit insurance, impose substantial fines and other civil and criminal penalties, and appoint a conservator or receiver. Under the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, CSB could be subject to restrictive actions if it were to fall within one of the lowest three of five capital categories. CSC and CSB are required to maintain minimum capital levels as specified in federal banking regulations. Failure to meet the minimum levels could result in certain mandatory, and possibly additional discretionary actions by the regulators that, if undertaken, could have a direct material effect on CSC and CSB. At December 31, 2018, both CSC and CSB met all of their respective capital requirements.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

The regulatory capital and ratios for CSC (consolidated) and CSB are as follows:

| | Actual | | Minimum to be Well Capitalized | | Minimum Capital Requirement | |
|---|----------|-------|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| | Amount | Ratio | Amount | Ratio | Amount | Ratio ⁽¹⁾ |
| December 31, 2018 | | | | | | |
| CSC | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | \$16,813 | 17.6% | N/A | | \$4,295 | 4.5% |
| Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | 19,606 | 20.5% | N/A | | 5,726 | 6.0% |
| Total Risk-Based Capital | 19,628 | 20.6% | N/A | | 7,635 | 8.0% |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 19,606 | 7.1% | N/A | | 11,058 | 4.0% |
| CSB | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | \$15,832 | 19.7% | \$5,233 | 6.5% | \$3,623 | 4.5% |
| Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | 15,832 | 19.7% | 6,441 | 8.0% | 4,831 | 6.0% |
| Total Risk-Based Capital | 15,853 | 19.7% | 8,051 | 10.0% | 6,441 | 8.0% |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 15,832 | 7.2% | 11,044 | 5.0% | 8,836 | 4.0% |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | | |
| CSC | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | \$14,630 | 19.3% | N/A | | \$3,414 | 4.5% |
| Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | 17,423 | 23.0% | N/A | | 4,552 | 6.0% |
| Total Risk-Based Capital | 17,452 | 23.0% | N/A | | 6,069 | 8.0% |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 17,423 | 7.6% | N/A | | 9,218 | 4.0% |
| CSB | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | \$13,355 | 20.1% | \$4,324 | 6.5% | \$2,993 | 4.5% |
| Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital | 13,355 | 20.1% | 5,321 | 8.0% | 3,991 | 6.0% |
| Total Risk-Based Capital | 13,382 | 20.1% | 6,652 | 10.0% | 5,321 | 8.0% |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 13,355 | 7.1% | 9,462 | 5.0% | 7,569 | 4.0% |

⁽¹⁾ Under the Basel III capital rule, CSC and CSB are also required to maintain a capital conservation buffer above the regulatory minimum capital ratios. The capital conservation buffer was 1.875% in 2018, and became 2.5% on January 1, 2019. If the capital conservation buffer falls below the minimum requirement, the Company would be subject to limits on capital distributions and discretionary bonus payments to executive officers. For 2018, the minimum capital requirement plus capital conservation buffer for Common Equity Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital, Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital, and Total Risk-Based Capital ratios were 6.375%, 7.875%, and 9.875%, respectively. At December 31, 2018, both CSC's and CSB's capital levels exceeded the fully implemented capital conservation buffer requirement.

N/A Not applicable.

Based on its regulatory capital ratios at December 31, 2018, CSB is considered well capitalized (the highest category) under its respective regulatory capital rules. There are no conditions or events since December 31, 2018 that management believes have changed CSB's capital category.

The Federal Reserve requires CSB to maintain reserve balances at the Federal Reserve based on its deposits that are considered to be transaction accounts. CSB's average reserve requirement was \$1.6 billion in 2018 and 2017. In late 2017, Schwab acquired a federal savings bank charter which is now called Charles Schwab Premier Bank (formerly

known as Charles Schwab Signature Bank). At December 31, 2018, the balance sheet of Charles Schwab Premier Bank consisted primarily of investment securities, and held total assets of \$15.2 billion. Charles Schwab Premier Bank is subject to similar regulatory guidelines and requirements, and seeks to maintain a Tier 1 Leverage Ratio similar to CSB.

CS&Co, a securities broker-dealer, is subject to the Uniform Net Capital Rule. CS&Co computes its net capital under the alternative method permitted by the Uniform Net Capital Rule. This method requires the maintenance of minimum net capital, as defined, of the greater of 2% of aggregate debit balances arising from client transactions or a minimum dollar requirement of \$250,000, which is based on the type of business conducted by the broker-dealer. Under the alternative method, a broker-dealer may not repay subordinated borrowings, pay cash dividends, or make any unsecured advances or loans if such payment would result in a net capital amount of less than 5% of aggregate debit balances or less than 120% of its minimum dollar requirement.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

Net capital and net capital requirements for CS&Co are as follows:

| | | |
|---|---------|---------|
| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
| Net capital | \$2,304 | \$2,118 |
| Minimum net capital required | 0.250 | 0.250 |
| 2% of aggregate debit balances | 436 | 435 |
| Net capital in excess of required net capital | \$1,868 | \$1,683 |

In accordance with the SEC Customer Protection Rule, CS&Co had portions of its cash and investments segregated for the exclusive benefit of clients at December 31, 2018. The SEC Customer Protection Rule requires broker-dealers to segregate client fully-paid securities and cash balances not collateralizing margin positions and not swept to money market funds or bank deposit accounts. Amounts included in cash and investments segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes represent actual balances on deposit, whereas cash and investments required to be segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes at December 31, 2018 for CS&Co totaled \$16.7 billion. As of January 3, 2019, CS&Co had deposited \$3.7 billion of cash and qualified securities into its segregated reserve accounts. Cash and investments required to be segregated and on deposit for regulatory purposes at December 31, 2017 for CS&Co totaled \$15.3 billion. On January 3, 2018, \$704 million of cash and qualified securities was deposited into the segregated reserve accounts.

22. Segment Information

Schwab's two reportable segments are Investor Services and Advisor Services. Schwab structures the operating segments according to its clients and the services provided to those clients. The Investor Services segment provides retail brokerage and banking services to individual investors and retirement plan services, as well as other corporate brokerage services, to businesses and their employees. The Advisor Services segment provides custodial, trading, banking, and support services, as well as retirement business services, to independent RIAs, independent retirement advisors, and recordkeepers. Revenues and expenses are allocated to the two segments based on which segment services the client.

The accounting policies of the segments are the same as those described in Note 2. For the computation of its segment information, Schwab utilizes an activity-based costing model to allocate traditional income statement line item expenses (e.g., compensation and benefits, depreciation and amortization, and professional services) to the business activities driving segment expenses (e.g., client service, opening new accounts, or business development) and a funds transfer pricing methodology to allocate certain revenues.

Management evaluates the performance of its segments on a pre-tax basis. Segment assets and liabilities are not used for evaluating segment performance or in deciding how to allocate resources to segments. There are no revenues from transactions between the segments.

Financial information for the segments is presented in the following table:

| Year Ended December 31, | Investor Services | | | Advisor Services | | | Total | | |
|--|-------------------|---------|---------|------------------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
| Net Revenues | | | | | | | | | |
| Net interest revenue | \$4,341 | \$3,231 | \$2,591 | \$1,482 | \$1,051 | \$731 | \$5,823 | \$4,282 | \$3,322 |
| Asset management and administration fees | 2,260 | 2,344 | 2,093 | 969 | 1,048 | 962 | 3,229 | 3,392 | 3,055 |

Edgar Filing: SCHWAB CHARLES CORP - Form 10-K

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| Trading revenue | 475 | 408 | 524 | 288 | 246 | 301 | 763 | 654 | 825 |
| Other | 245 | 217 | 203 | 72 | 73 | 73 | 317 | 290 | 276 |
| Total net revenues | 7,321 | 6,200 | 5,411 | 2,811 | 2,418 | 2,067 | 10,132 | 8,618 | 7,478 |
| Expenses Excluding Interest | 4,145 | 3,725 | 3,380 | 1,425 | 1,243 | 1,105 | 5,570 | 4,968 | 4,485 |
| Income before taxes on income | \$3,176 | \$2,475 | \$2,031 | \$1,386 | \$1,175 | \$962 | \$4,562 | \$3,650 | \$2,993 |
| Capital expenditures | \$390 | \$265 | \$234 | \$186 | \$147 | \$119 | \$576 | \$412 | \$353 |
| Depreciation and amortization | \$186 | \$203 | \$180 | \$120 | \$66 | \$54 | \$306 | \$269 | \$234 |

- 99 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

23. The Charles Schwab Corporation – Parent Company Only Financial Statements

Condensed Statements of Income

| Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|---|---------|---------|---------|
| Interest revenue | \$88 | \$33 | \$22 |
| Interest expense | (184) | (114) | (100) |
| Net interest expense | (96) | (81) | (78) |
| Other | 1 | 3 | 1 |
| Expenses excluding interest | (85) | (32) | (21) |
| Loss before income tax benefit and equity in net income of subsidiaries | (180) | (110) | (98) |
| Income tax benefit | 20 | 27 | 34 |
| Loss before equity in net income of subsidiaries | (160) | (83) | (64) |
| Equity in net income of subsidiaries: | | | |
| Equity in undistributed net income of subsidiaries | 2,590 | 1,479 | 1,690 |
| Dividends from bank subsidiaries | 750 | 625 | — |
| Dividends from non-bank subsidiaries | 327 | 333 | 263 |
| Net Income | 3,507 | 2,354 | 1,889 |
| Preferred stock dividends and other ⁽¹⁾ | 178 | 174 | 143 |
| Net Income Available to Common Stockholders | \$3,329 | \$2,180 | \$1,746 |

⁽¹⁾ Includes preferred stock dividends and undistributed earnings and dividends allocated to non-vested restricted stock units.

Condensed Balance Sheets

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|----------|----------|
| Assets | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$2,092 | \$2,825 |
| Receivables from subsidiaries | 784 | 571 |
| Available for sale securities | 1,754 | 573 |
| Held to maturity securities | 223 | 223 |
| Other securities owned — at fair value | 109 | 76 |
| Loans to non-bank subsidiaries | 185 | 448 |
| Investment in non-bank subsidiaries | 5,507 | 5,393 |
| Investment in bank subsidiaries | 16,995 | 13,224 |
| Other assets | 228 | 160 |
| Total assets | \$27,877 | \$23,493 |
| Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity | | |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | \$379 | \$276 |
| Payables to subsidiaries | 2 | — |
| Long-term debt | 6,826 | 4,692 |
| Total liabilities | 7,207 | 4,968 |
| Stockholders' equity | 20,670 | 18,525 |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$27,877 | \$23,493 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

| Condensed Statements of Cash Flows Year Ended December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Cash Flows from Operating Activities | | | |
| Net income | \$3,507 | \$2,354 | \$1,889 |
| Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by (used for) operating activities: | | | |
| Equity in undistributed earnings of subsidiaries | (2,590) | (1,479) | (1,690) |
| Other | 13 | 5 | (37) |
| Net change in: | | | |
| Other securities owned | (33) | (1) | (10) |
| Other assets | 28 | (26) | (27) |
| Accrued expenses and other liabilities | 28 | 44 | 30 |
| Net cash provided by (used for) operating activities | 953 | 897 | 155 |
| Cash Flows from Investing Activities | | | |
| Due from (to) subsidiaries — net | 408 | (374) | 95 |
| Increase in investments in subsidiaries | (1,188) | (342) | (1,547) |
| Repayments (Advances) of subordinated loan to CS&Co | (185) | — | 465 |
| Purchases of available for sale securities | (1,751) | (201) | (2) |
| Proceeds from sales of available for sale securities | — | 197 | 2 |
| Principal payments on available for sale securities | 573 | — | — |
| Other investing activities | (5) | (6) | (4) |
| Net cash provided by (used for) investing activities | (2,148) | (726) | (991) |
| Cash Flows from Financing Activities | | | |
| Issuance of long-term debt | 3,024 | 2,129 | — |
| Repayment of long-term debt | (900) | (250) | — |
| Repurchases of common stock | (1,000) | — | — |
| Net proceeds from preferred stock offerings | — | 492 | 1,316 |
| Redemption of preferred stock | — | (485) | — |
| Dividends paid | (787) | (592) | (486) |
| Proceeds from stock options exercised and other | 125 | 171 | 144 |
| Other financing activities | — | — | 44 |
| Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities | 462 | 1,465 | 1,018 |
| Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents | (733) | 1,636 | 182 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year | 2,825 | 1,189 | 1,007 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year | \$2,092 | \$2,825 | \$1,189 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(Tabular Amounts in Millions, Except Per Share Data, Option Price Amounts, Ratios, or as Noted)

24. Quarterly Financial Information (Unaudited)

| | Fourth Quarter | Third Quarter | Second Quarter | First Quarter |
|--|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Year Ended December 31, 2018: | | | | |
| Total Net Revenues | \$2,669 | \$2,579 | \$2,486 | \$2,398 |
| Total Expenses Excluding Interest | \$1,459 | \$1,360 | \$1,355 | \$1,396 |
| Net Income | \$935 | \$923 | \$866 | \$783 |
| Net Income Available to Common Stockholders | \$885 | \$885 | \$813 | \$746 |
| Weighted-Average Common Shares Outstanding — Basic | 1,343 | 1,351 | 1,350 | 1,347 |
| Weighted-Average Common Shares Outstanding — Diluted | 1,354 | 1,364 | 1,364 | 1,362 |
| Earnings Per Common Share — Basic | \$.66 | \$.66 | \$.60 | \$.55 |
| Earnings Per Common Share — Diluted | \$.65 | \$.65 | \$.60 | \$.55 |
| Dividends Declared Per Common Share | \$.13 | \$.13 | \$.10 | \$.10 |
| Year Ended December 31, 2017: | | | | |
| Total Net Revenues | \$2,242 | \$2,165 | \$2,130 | \$2,081 |
| Total Expenses Excluding Interest | \$1,289 | \$1,220 | \$1,221 | \$1,238 |
| Net Income | \$597 | \$618 | \$575 | \$564 |
| Net Income Available to Common Stockholders | \$550 | \$575 | \$530 | \$525 |
| Weighted-Average Common Shares Outstanding — Basic | 1,343 | 1,339 | 1,338 | 1,336 |
| Weighted-Average Common Shares Outstanding — Diluted | 1,358 | 1,353 | 1,351 | 1,351 |
| Earnings Per Common Share — Basic | \$.41 | \$.43 | \$.40 | \$.39 |
| Earnings Per Common Share — Diluted | \$.41 | \$.42 | \$.39 | \$.39 |
| Dividends Declared Per Common Share | \$.08 | \$.08 | \$.08 | \$.08 |

25. Subsequent Event

On January 30, 2019, CSC publicly announced that its Board of Directors authorized a new Share Repurchase Program to repurchase up to \$4.0 billion of common stock, and declared a four cent, or 31%, increase in the quarterly cash dividend to \$0.17 per common share. The share repurchase authorization does not have an expiration date.

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of The Charles Schwab Corporation:

Opinions on the Financial Statements and Internal Control over Financial Reporting

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of The Charles Schwab Corporation and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows, for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2018, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "financial statements"). We also have audited the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2018, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also, in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013) issued by COSO.

Basis for Opinions

The Company's management is responsible for these financial statements, for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting, and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements and an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud, and whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audits of the financial statements included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures to respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audits also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinions.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become

inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ DELOITTE & TOUCHE LLP

San Francisco, California

February 22, 2019

We have served as the Company's auditor since 1976.

- 103 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Management of The Charles Schwab Corporation, together with its subsidiaries (the Company), is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. The Company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed under the supervision of and effected by the Company's chief executive officer and chief financial officer to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of published financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

As of December 31, 2018, management conducted an assessment of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on the framework established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on this assessment, management has determined that the Company's internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2018.

The Company's internal control over financial reporting includes policies and procedures that pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect transactions and dispositions of assets; provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, and that receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and the directors of the Company; and provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on the Company's financial statements.

The Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, has been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report appearing on the previous page.

- 104 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

Item 9A. Controls and Procedures

Evaluation of disclosure controls and procedures: The management of the Company, with the participation of the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, has evaluated the effectiveness of the Company's disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rule 13a-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) as of December 31, 2018. Based on this evaluation, the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of December 31, 2018.

Changes in internal control over financial reporting: No change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) was identified during the quarter ended December 31, 2018, that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and the Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm are included in Item 8.

Item 9B. Other Information

None.

PART III

Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers, and Corporate Governance

The information relating to directors of CSC required to be furnished pursuant to this item is incorporated by reference from portions of the Company's definitive proxy statement for its annual meeting of stockholders to be filed with the SEC pursuant to Regulation 14A by April 30, 2019 (the Proxy Statement) under "Members of the Board of Directors," "Corporate Governance," "Director Nominations," and "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance." The Company's Code of Conduct and Business Ethics, applicable to directors and all employees, including senior financial officers, is available on the Company's website at <https://www.aboutschwab.com/governance>. If the Company makes any amendments to or grants any waivers from its Code of Conduct and Business Ethics, which are required to be disclosed pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Company will make such disclosures on this website.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Schwab Executive Officers of the Registrant

The following table provides certain information about each of the Company's executive officers as of December 31, 2018.

Executive Officers of the Registrant

| Name | Age | Title |
|------------------------|-----|--|
| Charles R. Schwab | 81 | Chairman of the Board |
| Walter W. Bettinger II | 58 | President and Chief Executive Officer |
| Marie A. Chandoha | 57 | Chief Executive Officer – Charles Schwab Investment Management, Inc. |
| Bernard J. Clark | 60 | Executive Vice President – Advisor Services |
| Jonathan M. Craig | 47 | Senior Executive Vice President |
| Peter B. Crawford | 50 | Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer |
| David R. Garfield | 62 | Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Corporate Secretary |
| Terri R. Kallsen | 50 | Executive Vice President – Investor Services |
| Joseph R. Martinetto | 56 | Senior Executive Vice President and Chief Operating Officer |
| Nigel J. Murtagh | 55 | Executive Vice President – Corporate Risk |

Mr. Schwab has been Chairman of the Board and a director of CSC since its incorporation in 1986. He also served as Chief Executive Officer of CSC from 1986 to 1997 and as Co-Chief Executive Officer from 1998 until 2003. He was re-appointed Chief Executive Officer in 2004 and served in that role until 2008. He served as Chairman of the Board and a director of CS&Co until 2018. Mr. Schwab is also Chairman of CSB.

Mr. Bettinger has been President and Chief Executive Officer of CSC since 2008. He serves on the Board of Directors of CSC and CSB, and is Chairman of CS&Co, as well as Chairman and trustee of The Charles Schwab Family of Funds, Schwab Investments, Schwab Capital Trust, Schwab Annuity Portfolios, Laudus Trust, and Schwab Strategic Trust, all registered investment companies and affiliates of CSC. Mr. Bettinger served as President and Chief Operating Officer of CSC from 2007 until 2008 and as Executive Vice President and President – Schwab Investor Services of CSC and CS&Co from 2005 to 2007. Mr. Bettinger joined Schwab in 1995.

Ms. Chandoha has been Chief Executive Officer of CSIM since 2011 and served as President of CSIM from 2011 until October 2018. She serves as a trustee of The Charles Schwab Family of Funds, Schwab Investments, Schwab Capital Trust, Schwab Annuity Portfolios, Laudus Trust, and Schwab Strategic Trust. On September 25, 2018, Ms. Chandoha announced her decision to retire on March 29, 2019. Ms. Chandoha joined Schwab in 2010.

Mr. Clark has been Executive Vice President – Advisor Services of CSC since 2012. Mr. Clark has served as Executive Vice President – Advisor Services of CS&Co since 2010. From 2006 until 2010, Mr. Clark served as Senior Vice President – Schwab Institutional Sales of Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. Mr. Clark joined Schwab in 1998.

Mr. Craig has been Senior Executive Vice President of CSC and CS&Co since 2018. He served as Executive Vice President – Client and Marketing Solutions for CSC from 2017 until 2018 and served as Executive Vice President and Chief Marketing Officer of CS&Co from 2012 until 2018. Mr. Craig joined Schwab in 2000.

Mr. Crawford has been Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of CSC and CS&Co since 2017. Prior to his appointment as Chief Financial Officer, Mr. Crawford was Executive Vice President of Finance from 2015 to 2017. He served as Senior Vice President of Schwab's asset management and client solutions organization from 2008 to 2015. He has served on the Board of Directors of CS&Co since 2018. Mr. Crawford joined Schwab in 2001.

Mr. Garfield has been Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Corporate Secretary of CSC since 2014 and Executive Vice President and Corporate Secretary of CS&Co since 2015. Mr. Garfield served as Deputy General Counsel of Wells Fargo & Company from 1998 to 2014. Mr. Garfield joined Schwab in 2014.

- 106 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Ms. Kallsen has been Executive Vice President – Investor Services of CSC and CS&Co since 2014. She served as Senior Vice President – Portfolio Consulting of CS&Co from 2012 until 2014 and as Senior Vice President – Branch Network from June 2014 until December 2014. Ms. Kallsen joined Schwab in 2012.

Mr. Martinetto has been Senior Executive Vice President of CSC and CS&Co since 2015, and Chief Operating Officer of CSC and CS&Co since 2018. He served as Chief Financial Officer of CSC and CS&Co from 2007 until 2017, and Executive Vice President of CSC and CS&Co from 2007 until 2015. He also serves on the Board of Directors of CS&Co and CSB. Additionally, Mr. Martinetto is a trustee of The Charles Schwab Family of Funds, Schwab Investments, Schwab Capital Trust, Schwab Annuity Portfolios, Laudus Trust, and Schwab Strategic Trust. Mr. Martinetto joined Schwab in 1997.

Mr. Murtagh has been Executive Vice President – Corporate Risk of CSC and CS&Co since 2012. He has served as Executive Vice President and Chief Risk Officer of CSB since 2018. He served as Senior Vice President and Chief Credit Officer of CS&Co from 2002 until 2012 and of CSC from 2008 until 2012. Mr. Murtagh joined Schwab in 2000.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Item 11. Executive Compensation

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item is incorporated by reference from portions of the Proxy Statement under “Compensation Discussion and Analysis,” “Executive Compensation Tables – 2018 Summary Compensation Table,” “Executive Compensation Tables – 2018 Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table,” “Executive Compensation Tables – Narrative to Summary Compensation and Grants of Plan-Based Awards Tables,” “Executive Compensation Tables – 2018 Termination and Change in Control Benefits Table,” “Executive Compensation Tables – Outstanding Equity Awards as of December 31, 2018,” “Executive Compensation Tables – 2018 Option Exercises and Stock Vested Table,” “Executive Compensation Tables – 2018 Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Table,” “Director Compensation,” and “Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation.” In addition, the information from a portion of the Proxy Statement under “Compensation Committee Report,” is incorporated by reference from the Proxy Statement and furnished on this Form 10-K, and shall not be deemed “filed” for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, nor shall it be deemed incorporated by reference in any filing under the Securities Act of 1933.

Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item is incorporated by reference from portions of the Proxy Statement under “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management,” and “Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans.”

Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item is incorporated by reference from portions of the Proxy Statement under “Transactions with Related Persons” and “Director Independence.”

Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item is incorporated by reference from a portion of the Proxy Statement under “Auditor Fees.”

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

PART IV

Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules

(a) Documents filed as part of this Report

1. Financial Statements

The financial statements and independent auditors' report are included in Item 8 and are listed below:

Consolidated Statements of Income
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income
Consolidated Balance Sheets
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

2. Financial Statement Schedules

Other financial statement schedules required pursuant to this Item are omitted because of the absence of conditions under which they are required or because the information is included in the Company's consolidated financial statements and notes in Item 8.

- 109 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

(b) Exhibits

The exhibits listed below are filed as part of this annual report on Form 10-K.

Exhibit
Number Exhibit

- 3.11 Fifth Restated Certificate of Incorporation, effective May 7, 2001, of the Registrant, filed as Exhibit 3.11 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.14 Fourth Restated Bylaws, as amended on January 27, 2010, of the Registrant, filed as Exhibit 3.14 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.15 Certificate of Designations of Fixed-to-Floating Rate Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series A of The Charles Schwab Corporation, filed as Exhibit 3.15 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.17 Certificate of Designations of 6.00% Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series C, of The Charles Schwab Corporation, filed as Exhibit 3.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated August 3, 2015, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.18 Certificate of Designations of 5.95% Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series D, of The Charles Schwab Corporation, filed as Exhibit 3.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated March 7, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.19 Certificate of Designations of 4.625% Fixed-to-Floating Rate Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series E, of The Charles Schwab Corporation, filed as Exhibit 3.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated October 31, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.20 Certificate of Designations of 5.00% Fixed-to-Floating Rate Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series F, of The Charles Schwab Corporation, filed as Exhibit 3.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated October 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 4.2 Deposit Agreement, dated August 3, 2015, between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Depository (including the form of Depository Share Receipt attached as Exhibit A thereto), filed as Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated August 3, 2015 and incorporated herein by reference.
- 4.3 Deposit Agreement, dated March 7, 2016, between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Depository (including the form of Depository Share Receipt attached as Exhibit A thereto), filed as Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated March 7, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 4.4 Deposit Agreement, dated October 31, 2016, between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Depository (including the form of Depository Share Receipt attached as Exhibit A thereto), filed as Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated October 31, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.
- 4.5 Deposit Agreement, dated October 31, 2017, between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Depository (including the form of Depository Share Receipt attached as Exhibit A thereto), filed as

Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Form 8-K dated October 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.

4.6 Neither the Registrant nor its subsidiaries are parties to any instrument with respect to long-term debt for which securities authorized thereunder exceed 10% of the total assets of the Registrant and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis. Copies of instruments with respect to long-term debt of lesser amounts will be provided to the SEC upon request.

10.4 Form of Release Agreement dated as of March 31, 1987 among BAC, Registrant, Schwab Holdings, Inc., Charles Schwab & Co., Inc., and former shareholders of Schwab Holdings, Inc., filed as the identically-numbered exhibit to Registrant's Registration Statement No. 33-16192 on Form S-1 and incorporated herein by reference.

10.57 Registration Rights and Stock Restriction Agreement, dated as of March 31, 1987, between the Registrant and the holders of the Common Stock, filed as Exhibit 4.23 to Registrant's Registration Statement No. 33-16192 on Form S-1 and incorporated herein by reference.

- 110 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

| Exhibit Number | Exhibit | |
|-------------------|--|---------|
| 10.72 | <u>Restatement of Assignment and License, as amended January 25, 1988, among Charles Schwab & Co., Inc., Charles R. Schwab and the Registrant, filed as Exhibit 10.72 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014 and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | |
| 10.271 | <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation Directors' Deferred Compensation Plan, as amended through December 8, 2004, filed as Exhibit 10.271 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | (2) |
| 10.272 | <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation Deferred Compensation Plan, as amended through December 8, 2004, filed as Exhibit 10.272 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, and</u> | (2) |
| | <u>incorporated herein by reference.</u> | |
| 10.314 | <u>Employment Agreement dated as of March 13, 2008, between the Registrant and Charles R. Schwab.</u> | (1),(2) |
| 10.338 | <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation 2004 Stock Incentive Plan, as approved at the Annual Meeting of Stockholders on May 17, 2011, filed as Exhibit 10.338 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | (2) |
| 10.349 | <u>The Charles Schwab Severance Pay Plan, as Amended and Restated Effective May 1, 2012, filed as Exhibit 10.349 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2017, and incorporated</u> | (2) |
| | <u>herein by reference.</u> | |
| 10.362 | <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation Directors' Deferred Compensation Plan II, as amended and restated as of April 24, 2013.</u> | (1),(2) |
| 10.376 | <u>Credit Agreement (364 – Day Commitment) dated as of June 2, 2017, between the Registrant and financial institutions therein, filed as Exhibit 10.376 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended</u> | (2) |
| | <u>June 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | |
| 10.381 | <u>Form of Notice and Retainer Stock Option Agreement for Non-Employee Directors under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.381 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by</u> | (2) |
| | <u>reference.</u> | |
| 10.382 | <u>Form of Notice and Retainer Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Non-Employee Directors under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.382 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by</u> | (2) |
| | <u>reference.</u> | |
| 10.383 | <u>Form of Notice and Stock Option Agreement for Non-Employee Directors under The Charles Schwab Corporation Directors' Deferred Compensation Plan II and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.383 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by</u> | (2) |
| | <u>reference.</u> | |

- 10.384 Form of Notice and Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Non-Employee Directors under The Charles Schwab Corporation Directors' Deferred Compensation Plan II and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.384 to the Registrant's Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference. (2)
- 10.385 The Charles Schwab Corporation Deferred Compensation Plan II, as amended and restated as of December 13, 2017, filed as Exhibit 10.385 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.(2)
- 10.386 Form of Notice and Performance-Based Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.386 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference. (2)
- 10.387 Form of Notice and Nonqualified Stock Option Agreement under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.387 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference. (2)
- 10.388 Form of Notice and Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans, filed as Exhibit 10.388 to the Registrant's Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference. (2)

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

| Exhibit Number | Exhibit | |
|----------------|--|---------|
| 10.389 | <u>The Charles Schwab Corporation Corporate Executive Bonus Plan, restated to include amendments approved at the Annual Meeting of Stockholders on May 13, 2015, as amended and restated as of December 13, 2017, filed as Exhibit 10.389 to the Registrant’s Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | (2) |
| 10.390 | <u>Summary of Non-Employee Director Compensation, filed as Exhibit 10.390 to the Registrant’s Form 10-k for the year ended December 31, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | (2) |
| 10.391 | <u>2013 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated, filed as Exhibit 10.391 to the Registrant’s Form 8-K dated May 15, 2018, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | (2) |
| 10.392 | <u>Credit Agreement (364 – Day Commitment) dated as of June 1, 2018, between the Registrant and financial institutions therein (supersedes Exhibit 10.376), filed as Exhibit 10.392 to the Registrant’s Form 8-K dated October 31, 2018, and incorporated herein by reference.</u> | |
| 10.393 | <u>Form of Notice and Nonqualified Stock Option Agreement under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans (supersedes Exhibit 10.387).</u> | (1),(2) |
| 10.394 | <u>Form of Notice and Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under The Charles Schwab Corporation 2013 Stock Incentive Plan and successor plans (supersedes Exhibit 10.388).</u> | (1),(2) |
| 21.1 | <u>Subsidiaries of the Registrant.</u> | |
| 23.1 | <u>Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm’s Consent.</u> | |
| 31.1 | <u>Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a), As Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u> | |
| 31.2 | <u>Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a), As Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u> | |
| 32.1 | <u>Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, As Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u> | (1) |
| 32.2 | <u>Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, As Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u> | (1) |
| 101.INS | XBRL Instance Document | (3) |
| 101.SCH | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema | (3) |
| 101.CAL | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation | (3) |
| 101.DEF | XBRL Extension Definition | (3) |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 101.LABXBRL Taxonomy Extension Label | (3) |
| 101.PRE XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation | (3) |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

Exhibit
Number Exhibit

(1) Furnished as an exhibit to this annual report on Form 10-K.

(2) Management contract or compensatory plan.

Attached as Exhibit 101 to this Annual Report on Form 10-K for the annual period ended December 31, 2018, are the following materials formatted in XBRL (Extensible Business Reporting Language) (i) the

(3) Consolidated Statements of Income, (ii) the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income, (iii) the Consolidated Balance Sheets, (iv) the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows, (v) the Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity, and (vi) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

- 113 -

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, on February 22, 2019.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB
CORPORATION
(Registrant)

BY: /s/ Walter W. Bettinger II
Walter W. Bettinger II
President and Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities indicated, on February 22, 2019.

| Signature / Title | Signature / Title |
|--|--|
| /s/ Walter W. Bettinger II Walter W. Bettinger II, President and Chief Executive Officer and Director | /s/ Peter Crawford Peter Crawford, Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (principal financial and accounting officer) |
| /s/ Charles R. Schwab Charles R. Schwab, Chairman of the Board | /s/ John K. Adams, Jr. John K. Adams, Jr., Director |
| /s/ Joan T. Dea Joan T. Dea, Director | /s/ Christopher V. Dodds Christopher V. Dodds, Director |
| /s/ Stephen A. Ellis Stephen A. Ellis, Director | /s/ Mark A. Goldfarb Mark A. Goldfarb, Director |
| /s/ William S. Haraf William S. Haraf, Director | /s/ Frank C. Herringer Frank C. Herringer, Director |
| /s/ Stephen T. McLin Stephen T. McLin, Director | /s/ Charles A. Ruffel Charles A. Ruffel, Director |
| /s/ Arun Sarin Arun Sarin, Director | /s/ Paula A. Sneed Paula A. Sneed, Director |
| /s/ Roger O. Walther Roger O. Walther, Director | |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION

STATISTICAL DISCLOSURE BY BANK HOLDING COMPANIES

The following table outlines the information required by the SEC's Industry Guide 3, "Statistical Disclosure by Bank Holding Companies," which is presented at the consolidated holding company level.

| Required Disclosure | Page |
|--|-----------|
| Distribution of Assets, Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity; Interest Rates and Interest Differential | F-2 – F-3 |
| Investment Portfolio | F-4 |
| Risk Elements – Cross-border Holdings | F-5 |
| Loan Portfolio | F-6 – F-7 |
| Summary of Loan Loss Experience | F-7 |
| Deposits | F-7 |
| Return on Equity and Assets | F-7 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
(Dollars in Millions)

The following supplemental financial data is consistent with the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Industry Guide 3 – Statistical Disclosure by Bank Holding Companies.

1. Three-year Net Interest Revenue and Average Balances

| | For the Year Ended December 31, 2018 | | | 2017 | | | 2016 | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|----------|--------------|-----------------|----------|--------------|-----------------|----------|--------------|
| | Average Balance | Interest | Average Rate | Average Balance | Interest | Average Rate | Average Balance | Interest | Average Rate |
| Assets: | | | | | | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$17,783 | \$348 | 1.93 % | \$9,931 | \$109 | 1.10 % | \$11,143 | \$57 | 0.51 % |
| Cash and investments segregated | 11,461 | 206 | 1.78 % | 18,525 | 166 | 0.90 % | 20,104 | 93 | 0.46 % |
| Broker-related receivables | 303 | 6 | 2.09 % | 430 | 3 | 0.70 % | 558 | 1 | 0.22 % |
| Receivables from brokerage clients | 19,870 | 830 | 4.12 % | 16,269 | 575 | 3.53 % | 15,001 | 497 | 3.31 % |
| Available for sale securities ⁽¹⁾ | 54,542 | 1,241 | 2.26 % | 53,040 | 815 | 1.54 % | 72,586 | 883 | 1.22 % |
| Held to maturity securities | 131,794 | 3,348 | 2.53 % | 103,599 | 2,354 | 2.27 % | 57,451 | 1,402 | 2.44 % |
| Bank loans ⁽⁵⁾ | 16,554 | 559 | 3.37 % | 15,919 | 472 | 2.97 % | 14,715 | 400 | 2.72 % |
| Total interest-earning assets | 252,307 | 6,538 | 2.57 % | 217,713 | 4,494 | 2.06 % | 191,558 | 3,333 | 1.74 % |
| Other interest revenue | | 142 | | | 130 | | | 160 | |
| Total interest-earning assets | 252,307 | 6,680 | 2.63 % | 217,713 | 4,624 | 2.12 % | 191,558 | 3,493 | 1.82 % |
| Noninterest-earning assets ^(2,3) | 11,681 | | | 9,968 | | | 9,354 | | |
| Total assets | \$263,988 | | | \$227,681 | | | \$200,912 | | |
| Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity: | | | | | | | | | |
| Bank deposits | \$199,139 | \$545 | 0.27 % | \$163,998 | \$148 | 0.09 % | \$141,432 | \$37 | 0.03 % |
| Payables to brokerage clients | 21,178 | 56 | 0.27 % | 25,403 | 16 | 0.06 % | 26,311 | 3 | 0.01 % |
| Short-term borrowings | 3,359 | 54 | 1.59 % | 3,503 | 41 | 1.17 % | 1,864 | 9 | 0.48 % |
| Long-term debt | 5,423 | 190 | 3.50 % | 3,431 | 119 | 3.47 % | 2,876 | 104 | 3.62 % |
| Total interest-bearing liabilities | 229,099 | 845 | 0.37 % | 196,335 | 324 | 0.17 % | 172,483 | 153 | 0.09 % |
| Other interest expense | | 12 | | | 18 | | | 18 | |
| Noninterest-bearing liabilities ^(2,4) | 14,883 | | | 13,787 | | | 13,375 | | |
| Total liabilities ⁽⁶⁾ | 243,982 | 857 | 0.34 % | 210,122 | 342 | 0.15 % | 185,858 | 171 | 0.09 % |
| Stockholders' equity ⁽²⁾ | 20,006 | | | 17,559 | | | 15,054 | | |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$263,988 | | | \$227,681 | | | \$200,912 | | |
| Net interest revenue | | \$5,823 | | | \$4,282 | | | \$3,322 | |
| Net yield on interest-earning assets | | | 2.29 % | | | 1.97 % | | | 1.73 % |

(1) Amounts calculated based on amortized cost.

(2) Average balance calculation based on month end balances.

(3) Noninterest-earning assets include equipment, office facilities, and property – net, goodwill, and other assets that do not generate interest income.

(4) Noninterest-bearing liabilities consist of other liabilities that do not generate interest expense.

(5) Includes average principal balances of nonaccrual loans.

(6) Average rate calculation based on total funding sources.

F-2

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
 Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
 (Dollars in Millions)

2. Analysis of Change in Net Interest Revenue

An analysis of the year-to-year changes in the categories of interest revenue and interest expense resulting from changes in volume and rate is as follows:

| | 2018 Compared to 2017 | | | 2017 Compared to 2016 | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| | Increase (Decrease) Due to Change in: | | | Increase (Decrease) Due to Change in: | | |
| | Average Volume | Average Rate | Total | Average Volume | Average Rate | Total |
| Interest-earning assets: | | | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents ⁽¹⁾ | \$86 | \$153 | \$239 | \$(6) | \$58 | \$52 |
| Cash and investments segregated | (64) | 104 | 40 | (7) | 80 | 73 |
| Broker-related receivables | (1) | 4 | 3 | — | 2 | 2 |
| Receivables from brokerage clients | 127 | 128 | 255 | 42 | 36 | 78 |
| Available for sale securities ⁽²⁾ | 23 | 403 | 426 | (238) | 170 | (68) |
| Held to maturity securities | 640 | 354 | 994 | 1,126 | (174) | 952 |
| Bank loans ⁽³⁾ | 19 | 68 | 87 | 33 | 39 | 72 |
| Other interest revenue | — | 12 | 12 | — | (30) | (30) |
| Total interest-earning assets | \$830 | \$1,226 | \$2,056 | \$950 | \$181 | \$1,131 |
| Interest-bearing sources of funds: | | | | | | |
| Bank deposits | \$32 | \$365 | \$397 | \$7 | \$104 | \$111 |
| Payables to brokerage clients | (3) | 43 | 40 | — | 13 | 13 |
| Short-term borrowings | (2) | 15 | 13 | 8 | 24 | 32 |
| Long-term debt | 69 | 2 | 71 | 20 | (5) | 15 |
| Other interest expense | — | (6) | (6) | — | — | — |
| Total sources on which interest is paid | 96 | 419 | 515 | 35 | 136 | 171 |
| Change in net interest revenue | \$734 | \$807 | \$1,541 | \$915 | \$45 | \$960 |

Changes that are not due solely to volume or rate have been allocated to rate.

(1) Includes deposits with banks and short-term investments.

(2) Amounts have been calculated based on amortized cost.

(3) Includes average principal balances of nonaccrual loans.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
(Dollars in Millions)

3. Investment Securities

The amortized cost, gross unrealized gains and losses, and fair value of AFS and HTM securities for 2016 are as follows:

| December 31, 2016 | Amortized Cost | Gross Unrealized Gains | Gross Unrealized Losses | Fair Value |
|--|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Available for sale securities: | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 33,167 | \$ 120 | \$ 92 | \$33,195 |
| Asset-backed securities | 20,520 | 29 | 214 | 20,335 |
| Corporate debt securities | 9,850 | 20 | 18 | 9,852 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 8,679 | 3 | 59 | 8,623 |
| Certificates of deposit | 2,070 | 2 | 1 | 2,071 |
| U.S. agency notes | 1,915 | — | 8 | 1,907 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 1,167 | 2 | 46 | 1,123 |
| Commercial paper | 214 | — | — | 214 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 45 | — | — | 45 |
| Total available for sale securities | \$ 77,627 | \$ 176 | \$ 438 | \$77,365 |
| Held to maturity securities: | | | | |
| U.S. agency mortgage-backed securities | \$ 72,439 | \$ 324 | \$ 1,086 | \$71,677 |
| Non-agency commercial mortgage-backed securities | 997 | 11 | 4 | 1,004 |
| Asset-backed securities | 941 | — | — | 941 |
| Corporate debt securities | 436 | — | — | 436 |
| U.S. Treasury securities | 223 | — | 4 | 219 |
| Commercial paper | 99 | — | — | 99 |
| U.S. state and municipal securities | 68 | 1 | 1 | 68 |
| Total held to maturity securities | \$ 75,203 | \$ 336 | \$ 1,095 | \$74,444 |

For additional information on 2018 and 2017 investments, see Item 8 – Note 6.

As of December 31, 2018, in addition to holdings of securities issued by the U.S. Government and U.S. Government agencies and corporations, the Company's holdings of investment securities from single issuers with aggregate book values in excess of ten percent of stockholders' equity are detailed in the table below. These securities have performed in a manner consistent with the investment securities portfolio as a whole.

| Issuer | Aggregate Amortized Cost | Aggregate Fair Value |
|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Discover Card Execution Note Trust ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 2,300 | \$ 2,295 |
| American Express Credit Account Master Trust Class A ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 2,251 | \$ 2,241 |
| Capital One Multi-Asset Execution Trust Class A ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 2,140 | \$ 2,140 |

⁽¹⁾ Included in AFS and HTM securities in the Company's consolidated balance sheets.

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
 Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
 (Dollars in Millions)

4. Cross-border Holdings

The below information describes Schwab's cross-border holdings, based on fair value, as of December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016. Such holdings, by country, that exceed 0.75% of total assets are disclosed separately.

| December 31, 2018 | Banks and other financial institutions | Commercial and industrial institutions | Total | Exposure as a % of total assets |
|-------------------|---|--|--------------|------------------------------------|
| Country: | | | | |
| France | \$ 2,793 | \$ | — \$2,7930.9 | % |
| Total | \$ 2,793 | \$ | — \$2,793 | |

There were no cross-border holdings that exceeded 0.75% of total assets at December 31, 2017.

| December 31, 2016 | Banks and other financial institutions | Commercial and industrial institutions | Total | Exposure as a % of total assets |
|-------------------|---|--|------------|------------------------------------|
| Country: | | | | |
| France | \$ 1,784 | \$ 110 | \$1,8940.8 | % |
| Total | \$ 1,784 | \$ 110 | \$1,894 | |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
 Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
 (Dollars in Millions)

5. Bank Loans and Related Allowance for Loan Losses

The composition of the loan portfolio is as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 | 2014 |
|---------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| First Mortgages | \$10,384 | \$10,016 | \$9,134 | \$8,334 | \$8,127 |
| HELOCs | 1,505 | 1,943 | 2,350 | 2,735 | 2,955 |
| Pledged asset lines | 4,561 | 4,369 | 3,851 | 3,232 | 2,320 |
| Other | 180 | 176 | 94 | 64 | 39 |
| Total bank loans | \$16,630 | \$16,504 | \$15,429 | \$14,365 | \$13,441 |

An analysis of nonaccrual loans is as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 | 2014 |
|--------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Nonaccrual loans | \$21 | \$28 | \$26 | \$28 | \$35 |
| Average nonaccrual loans | \$25 | \$27 | \$27 | \$30 | \$39 |

There were no loans accruing interest that were contractually 90 days or more past due as of any period presented.

Changes in the allowance for loan losses were as follows:

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 | 2014 |
|------------------------------|------|------|------|-------|------|
| Balance at beginning of year | \$26 | \$26 | \$31 | \$42 | \$48 |
| Charge-offs | (1) | (3) | (2) | (3) | (5) |
| Recoveries | 2 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| Provision for loan losses | (6) | — | (5) | (11) | (4) |
| Balance at end of year | \$21 | \$26 | \$26 | \$31 | \$42 |

The maturities of the loan portfolio are as follows:

| December 31, 2018 | Within 1 year | After 1 year through 5 years | After 5 years | Total |
|--------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| First Mortgages ⁽¹⁾ | \$— | \$ — | \$10,384 | \$10,384 |
| HELOCs ⁽²⁾ | 760 | 291 | 454 | 1,505 |
| Pledged asset lines | 679 | 3,869 | 13 | 4,561 |
| Other | 6 | 169 | 5 | 180 |
| Total | \$1,445 | \$ 4,329 | \$10,856 | \$16,630 |

⁽¹⁾ Maturities are based upon the contractual terms of the loans.

⁽²⁾ Maturities are based on an initial draw period of ten years.

The interest sensitivity of loans with contractual maturities in excess of one year is as follows:

| December 31, 2018 | After 1 year |
|--|-----------------|
| Loans with floating or adjustable interest rates | \$14,175 |
| Loans with predetermined interest rates | 1,010 |
| Total | \$15,185 |

THE CHARLES SCHWAB CORPORATION
 Supplemental Financial Data (Unaudited)
 (Dollars in Millions)

6. Summary of Loan Loss on Banking Loans Experience

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 | 2014 | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---|
| Average loans | \$16,554 | \$15,919 | \$14,715 | \$13,973 | \$12,906 | |
| Allowance to year end loans | .13 | % .16 | % .17 | % .21 | % .31 | % |
| Allowance to nonperforming loans | 100 | % 93 | % 101 | % 110 | % 120 | % |
| Nonperforming assets to average loans and real estate owned | .14 | % .20 | % .21 | % .26 | % .31 | % |

7. Bank Deposits

The following table presents the average amount of and the average rate paid on deposit categories that are in excess of ten percent of average total deposits from banking clients:

| December 31, | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | |
|---|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| | Amount | Rate | Amount | Rate | Amount | Rate |
| Analysis of average daily deposits: | | | | | | |
| Money market and other savings deposits | \$184,039 | 0.28% | \$148,679 | 0.09% | \$126,719 | 0.02% |
| Interest-bearing demand deposits | 15,100 | 0.25% | 15,319 | 0.14% | 14,713 | 0.07% |
| Total | \$199,139 | | \$163,998 | | \$141,432 | |

At December 31, 2018, there were no certificates of deposit of \$100,000 or more included in bank deposits.

8. Ratios

| December 31, | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 |
|--|--------|--------|--------|
| Return on average total stockholders' equity | 17.53% | 13.41% | 12.55% |
| Return on average total assets | 1.33% | 1.03% | 0.94% |
| Average total stockholders' equity as a percentage of average total assets | 7.58% | 7.71% | 7.49% |
| Dividend payout ratio ⁽¹⁾ | 18.78% | 19.88% | 20.61% |

Note: Average balance calculations based on month end balances.

⁽¹⁾ Dividends declared per common share divided by diluted EPS.